2000 Seville

CADILLAC®

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Every 2000 Seville under warranty is backed with the following services:

Bumper-to-Bumper
4-years/50,000 miles (80 000 km)
Limited Warranty

24-hour Roadside Assistance

1-800-882-1112

that provides in an emergency:

- ***Free*** lockout assistance
- ***Free*** dead-battery assistance
- ***Free*** out-of-fuel assistance
- ***Free*** flat-tire change
- ***Emergency*** towing

Courtesy Transportation

Deluxe Trip Routing

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2000 Cadillac Seville
Owner's Manual

Litho in U.S.A.
Part Number 25695352 A First Edition

© Copyright General Motors Corporation 1999
All Rights Reserved

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Table of Contents

Seats and Restraint Systems

- Seats and Seat Controls
- Safety Belts
- Air Bag Systems
- Child Restraints

Features and Controls

- Keys and Door Locks
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System
- Trunk Release
- Automatic Transmission
- Parking Brake
- Windows
- Tilt Wheel
- Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever
- Windshield Wipers
- Cruise Control
- Interior and Exterior Lamps
- Mirrors
- Storage Compartments
- Convenience Net
- Accessory Power Outlets
- OnStar® System (If Equipped)
- Sunroof (Option)
- HomeLink® Transmitter (Option)
- Instrument Panel, Warning Lights and Gages
- Driver Information Center
- Memory and Personalization/Personal Choice Feature

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 3

Comfort Controls and Audio Systems

- Heating and Air Conditioning
- Setting the Radio Clock
- Radio/Cassette Player/CD Player
- Radio Theft-Deterrent Feature
- Steering Wheel Controls (If Equipped)

Section 4

Your Driving and the Road

- Defensive Driving
- Drunken Driving
- Control of a Vehicle
- Braking
- Steering
- Driving Tips for Various Road Conditions
- Loading Your Vehicle
- Towing a Trailer

Section 5

Problems on the Road

- Hazard Warning Flashers
- Jump Starting
- Towing Your Vehicle
- Engine Overheating
- Changing a Flat Tire
- If You're Stuck

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 6

Service and Appearance Care

- Fuel
- Checking Fluids and Lubricants
- GM Oil Life System™
- Engine Air Cleaner/Filter
- Brakes
- Bulb Replacement
- Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement
- Tires and Wheels
- Appearance Care
- Electrical System/Fuses and Circuit Breakers
- Capacities and Specifications
- Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts

Maintenance Schedule

- Scheduled Maintenance
- Owner Checks and Services
- Periodic Maintenance Inspections
- Recommended Fluids and Lubricants
- Maintenance Records

See separate ***Maintenance Schedule Booklet***

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance Information

- Customer Satisfaction Procedures
- Customer Assistance Offices
- Roadside Assistance and Courtesy Transportation
- Warranty Information (See Warranty Manual)
- Reporting Safety Defects on page 7-10
- Service Publications

Please refer to the last page of this manual for your *Service Station Guide*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

GENERAL MOTORS, GM and the GM Emblem, CADILLAC, the CADILLAC Crest & Wreath and the name SEVILLE are registered trademarks of General Motors Corporation.

This manual includes the latest information at the time it was printed. We reserve the right to make changes in the product after that time without further notice. For vehicles first sold in Canada, substitute the name "General Motors of Canada Limited" for Cadillac Motor Car Division whenever it appears in this manual.

Please keep this manual in your vehicle, so it will be there if you ever need it when you're on the road. If you sell the vehicle, please leave this manual in it so the new owner can use it.

We support voluntary technician certification.

For Canadian Owners Who Prefer a French Language Manual:

Aux propriétaires canadiens: Vous pouvez vous procurer un exemplaire de ce guide en français chez votre concessionaire ou au:

DGN Marketing Services Ltd.
1577 Meyerside Dr.
Mississauga, Ontario L5T 1B9

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Use this Manual

Many people read their owner's manual from beginning to end when they first receive their new vehicle. If you do this, it will help you learn about the features and controls for your vehicle. In this manual, you'll find that pictures and words work together to explain things quickly.

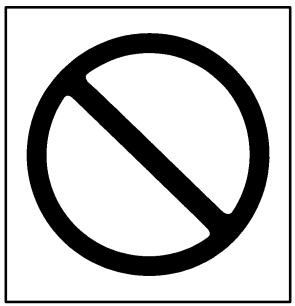
Safety Warnings and Symbols

You will find a number of safety cautions in this book. We use a box and the word CAUTION to tell you about things that could hurt you if you were to ignore the warning.

⚠ CAUTION:

These mean there is something that could hurt you or other people.

In the caution area, we tell you what the hazard is. Then we tell you what to do to help avoid or reduce the hazard. Please read these cautions. If you don't, you or others could be hurt.



You will also find a circle with a slash through it in this book. This safety symbol means "Don't," "Don't do this" or "Don't let this happen."

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Damage Warnings

Also, in this book you will find these notices:

NOTICE:

These mean there is something that could damage your vehicle.

In the notice area, we tell you about something that can damage your vehicle. Many times, this damage would not be covered by your warranty, and it could be costly. But the notice will tell you what to do to help avoid the damage.

When you read other manuals, you might see CAUTION and NOTICE warnings in different colors or in different words.

You'll also see warning labels on your vehicle. They use the same words, CAUTION or NOTICE.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Symbols

These are some of the symbols you may find on your vehicle.

For example, these symbols are used on an original battery:

CAUTION POSSIBLE INJURY

PROTECT EYES BY SHIELDING

CAUSTIC BATTERY ACID COULD CAUSE BURNS

AVOID SPARKS OR FLAMES

SPARK OR FLAME COULD EXPLODE BATTERY

These symbols are important for you and your passengers whenever your vehicle is driven:

DOOR LOCK UNLOCK

FASTEN SEAT BELTS

POWER WINDOW

AIR BAG

These symbols have to do with your lamps:

MASTER LIGHTING SWITCH

TURN SIGNALS

PARKING LAMPS

HAZARD WARNING FLASHER

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

FOG LAMPS

These symbols are on some of your controls:

WINDSHIELD WIPER

WINDSHIELD WASHER

WINDSHIELD DEFROSTER

REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER

VENTILATING FAN

These symbols are used on warning and indicator lights:

ENGINE COOLANT TEMP

BATTERY CHARGING SYSTEM

BRAKE

COOLANT

ENGINE OIL PRESSURE

ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

Here are some other symbols you may see:

FUSE

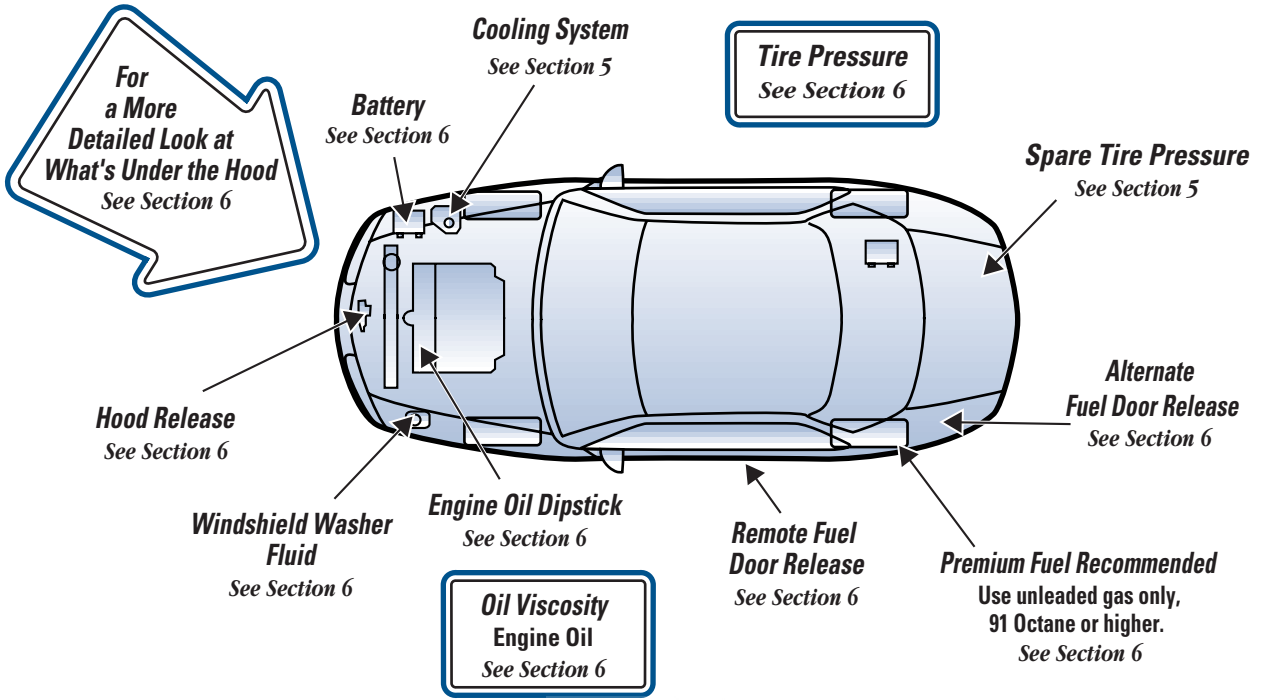
LIGHTER

HORN

SPEAKER

FUEL

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 1 Seats and Restraint System

Here you'll find information about the seats in your vehicle and how to use your safety belts properly. You can also learn about some things you should *not* do with air bags and safety belts.

1- 2 Seats and Seat Controls
1- 7 Safety Belts: They're For Everyone
1- 12 Here are Questions Many People Ask About Safety Belts -- and the Answers
1- 13 How to Wear Safety Belts Properly
1- 13 Driver Position
1- 19 Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy
1- 20 Right Front Passenger Position
1- 20 Supplemental Inflatable Restraint (SIR) Systems
1- 29 Safety Belt Pretensioners
1- 29 Rear Seat Passengers
1- 32 Children
1- 35 Child Restraints
1- 45 Larger Children
1- 48 Safety Belt Extender
1- 48 Checking Your Restraint Systems
1- 48 Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Seats and Seat Controls

This section tells you about the power seats -- how to adjust them, and also about reclining front seatbacks, lumbar adjustments, heated seats and head restraints.

Power Seats

The power seat controls are located on the outboard side of the front seat cushions.

- Move the front of the seat control up or down to adjust the front portion of the cushion.
- Move the rear of the seat control up or down to adjust the rear portion of the cushion.
- Lift up or push down on center of the seat control to move the entire seat up or down.
- To move the seat forward or rearward, slide the seat control forward or rearward.

Four Way Power Lumbar Control (If Equipped)

If you have this feature, the driver's and passenger's seatback lumbar support can be adjusted four ways by moving a single switch located on the side of the seat.

To increase or decrease support, hold the switch forward or rearward. To move the lumbar up or down, hold the switch up or down.

Keep in mind that as your seating position changes, as it may during long trips, so should the position of your lumbar support. Adjust the seat as needed.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Massaging Lumbar (If Equipped)

Push or tap the lumbar control, where it is marked AUTO, located on the outboard side of each front seat, up for half a second to activate the massage feature. The massage cycle will run for 10 minutes and can be turned off by pushing the lumbar control down briefly. The lumbar support can be adjusted during the massage cycle by moving the switch forward to increase support and rearward to decrease support. The massage cycle will continue to run even if the ignition is turned to OFF, unless interrupted.

Adaptive Seat Control (If Equipped)

The adaptive seat control is located on the outboard side of each front seat. Use the power seat control first to get the proper position.

When the ignition is turned to ON, and a driver or passenger is in the equipped seat, the adaptive seat feature will automatically activate. The seatback and cushion will inflate to adjust to your body's positioning for the duration of the trip in four-minute cycles.

To reshape the lower seatback, press the lumbar control forward to increase support and rearward to decrease support.

To turn off the adaptive seat feature, press the control down. The seat will deflate when the adaptive seat control or the ignition is turned off.

Adaptive Massage (If Equipped)

Push the lumbar control, where it is marked AUTO, located on the outboard side of each front seat, up for half a second to activate the massage feature. The massage cycle will run for 5 minutes and can be turned off by pushing the lumbar control down briefly. The lumbar support can be adjusted during the massage cycle by moving the switch forward to increase support and rearward to decrease support.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Memory Seat, Mirrors and Steering Wheel (Option)

The controls for these features are located on the driver's door panel, and are used to program and recall memory settings.

Adjust the driver's seat (including the recliner, lumbar, and head restraint adjustments), both the outside mirrors and steering wheel to a comfortable position and then press the MEMORY SET button. Within five seconds, press button 1 (for driver 1).

A second mirror, seating and steering wheel position can be programmed by repeating the above steps and pressing button 2 (for driver 2). Each time a memory button is pressed, a single beep will sound. Each time button 1 or 2 is pressed, the memory positions will be recalled. Two personalized exit positions can be set by first recalling the driving position (1 or 2), positioning the wheel and seat (except the lumbar and head restraints) in the desired exit positions and then pressing the MEMORY SET button and, within five seconds, pressing the EXIT button. The exit position for either previously set driver can be recalled by pressing the EXIT button.

If you use the remote keyless entry transmitter to enter your vehicle, automatic seat and mirror movement will occur. The numbers on the back of the transmitters, 1 and 2, correspond directly to the numbers on the buttons on the door panel and each seat and mirror can be programmed to suit driver 1 or 2.

When the key is placed in the ignition in the OFF position or when the unlock button is pressed on the transmitter, the seats and mirrors will automatically adjust to the programmed position.

Programming for automatic mirror and/or seat movement is done through the Driver Information Center (DIC). You can choose to either select or not select automatic seat and/or mirror movement using the transmitter or by placing your key in the ignition. For programming information, see "Vehicle Programming and Personalization Features" in the Index.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Heated Seats (Option)

This option is only available if your vehicle is equipped with the power lumbar control feature.

The front seat controls are located in the center console. The rear seat controls are located on the rear door. (Note that only the outboard positions in the rear seats are heated.)

Push the button once for a high setting, twice for a low setting, and a third time to turn off the heated seat. The LO setting warms the seatback and cushion until the seat approximates body temperature. The HI setting heats the seat to a slightly higher temperature.

The heated seats can only be used when the ignition is turned on. The heating elements in the seats automatically turn off when the vehicle's ignition is turned off.

Reclining Front Seatbacks

The reclining front seatback controls are located on the outboard side of each front seat.

Press the top of the control forward or rearward to adjust the seatback angle. Push up or down to adjust the headrest and shoulder belt.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

But don’t have a seatback reclined if your vehicle is moving.

⚠ CAUTION:

Sitting in a reclined position when your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your safety belts can’t do their job when you’re reclined like this.

The shoulder belt can’t do its job. In a crash you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt can’t do its job either. In a crash the belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear your safety belt properly.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Head Restraints

The switches to move your head restraints are located on the outboard side of each front seat.

Use this switch to move a front head restraint up or down. Lift up on the switch to move the head restraint up. Press down on the switch to move the head restraint down. The top of the head restraint should be closest to the top of your ears. This position helps reduce the chance of a neck injury in a crash. When you move a front seat head restraint up or down, the shoulder belt height changes.

The head restraints tilt forward and rearward also.

To tilt the head restraints forward, grasp the top of the restraint and move it forward to where you want it to go until you hear a click. It will then be locked into that position until you need to move it again. Pulling forward past the last position will allow the restraint to return to an upright position.

Some rear seats have adjustable head restraints. Slide an adjustable head restraint up or down so that the top of the restraint is closest to the top of your ears. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

The head restraints tilt forward and rearward also.

Safety Belts: They’re for Everyone

This part of the manual tells you how to use safety belts properly. It also tells you some things you should not do with safety belts.

And it explains the Supplemental Inflatable Restraint (SIR), or air bag system.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Don't let anyone ride where he or she can't wear a safety belt properly. If you are in a crash and you're not wearing a safety belt, your injuries can be much worse. You can hit things inside the vehicle or be ejected from it. You can be seriously injured or killed. In the same crash, you might not be if you are buckled up. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passengers' belts are fastened properly too.

⚠ CAUTION:

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

Your vehicle has a light that comes on as a reminder to buckle up. (See "Safety Belt Reminder Light" in the Index.)

In most states and Canadian provinces, the law says to wear safety belts. Here's why: *They work.*

You never know if you'll be in a crash. If you do have a crash, you don't know if it will be a bad one.

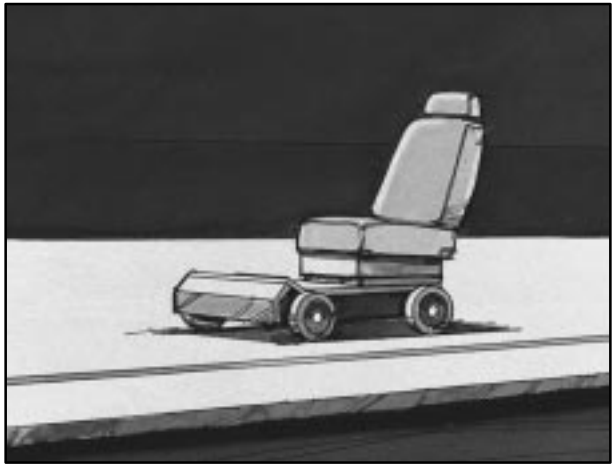
A few crashes are mild, and some crashes can be so serious that even buckled up a person wouldn't survive. But most crashes are in between. In many of them, people who buckle up can survive and sometimes walk away. Without belts they could have been badly hurt or killed.

After more than 30 years of safety belts in vehicles, the facts are clear. In most crashes buckling up does matter ... a lot!

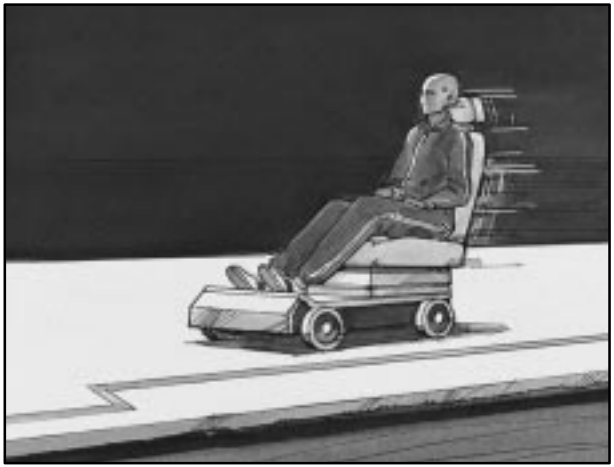
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Why Safety Belts Work

When you ride in or on anything, you go as fast as it goes.

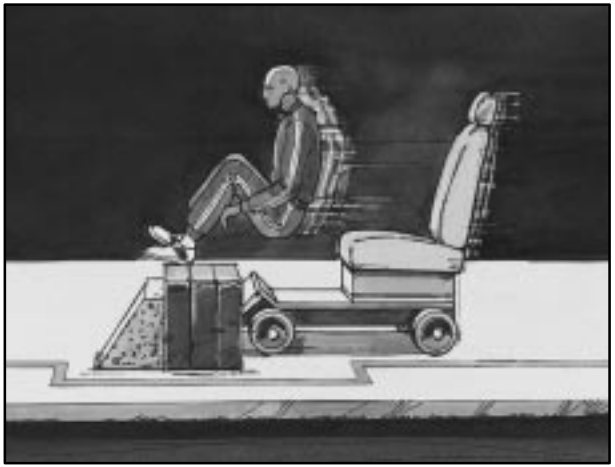


Take the simplest vehicle. Suppose it's just a seat on wheels.



Put someone on it.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

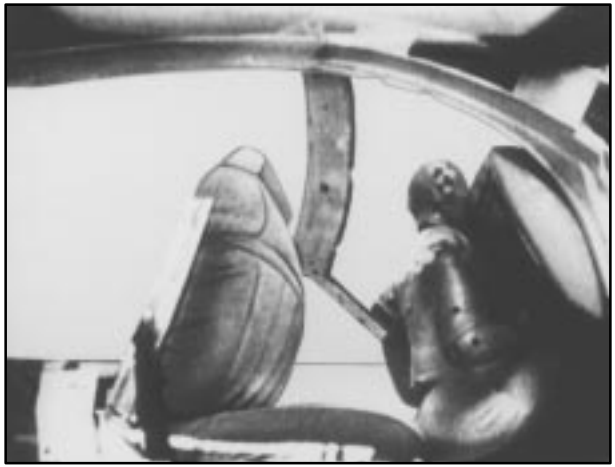


Get it up to speed. Then stop the vehicle. The rider doesn’t stop.

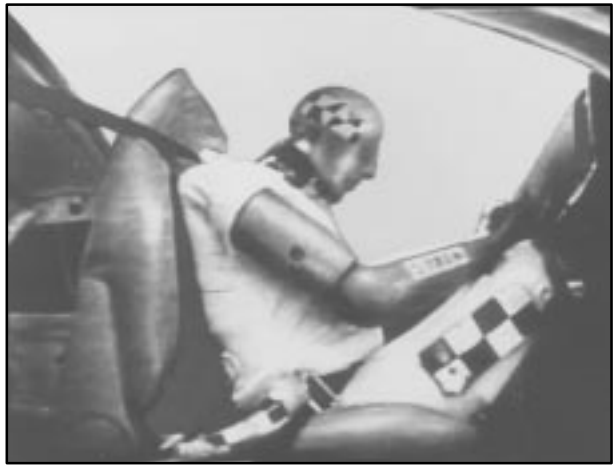
The person keeps going until stopped by something.

In a real vehicle, it could be the windshield ...

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



or the instrument panel ...



or the safety belts!

With safety belts, you slow down as the vehicle does. You get more time to stop. You stop over more distance, and your strongest bones take the forces. That’s why safety belts make such good sense.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Here Are Questions Many People Ask About Safety Belts -- and the Answers

Q: Won't I be trapped in the vehicle after an accident if I'm wearing a safety belt?

A: You *could* be -- whether you're wearing a safety belt or not. But you can unbuckle a safety belt, even if you're upside down. And your chance of being conscious during and after an accident, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted.

Q: If my vehicle has air bags, why should I have to wear safety belts?

A: Air bags are in many vehicles today and will be in most of them in the future. But they are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts -- not instead of them. Every air bag system ever offered for sale has required the use of safety belts. Even if you're in a vehicle that has air bags, you still have to buckle up to get the most protection. That's true not only in frontal collisions, but especially in side and other collisions.

Q: If I'm a good driver, and I never drive far from home, why should I wear safety belts?

A: You may be an excellent driver, but if you're in an accident -- even one that isn't your fault -- you and your passengers can be hurt. Being a good driver doesn't protect you from things beyond your control, such as bad drivers.

Most accidents occur within 25 miles (40 km) of home. And the greatest number of serious injuries and deaths occur at speeds of less than 40 mph (65 km/h).

Safety belts are for everyone.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

Adults

This part is only for people of adult size.

Be aware that there are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and babies. If a child will be riding in your vehicle, see the part of this manual called “Children.” Follow those rules for everyone’s protection.

First, you’ll want to know which restraint systems your vehicle has.

We’ll start with the driver position.

Driver Position

This part describes the driver’s restraint system.

Lap-Shoulder Belt

The driver has a lap-shoulder belt. Here’s how to wear it properly.

1. Close and lock the door.
2. Adjust the seat (to see how, see “Seats” in the Index) so you can sit up straight.

3. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Don’t let it get twisted.

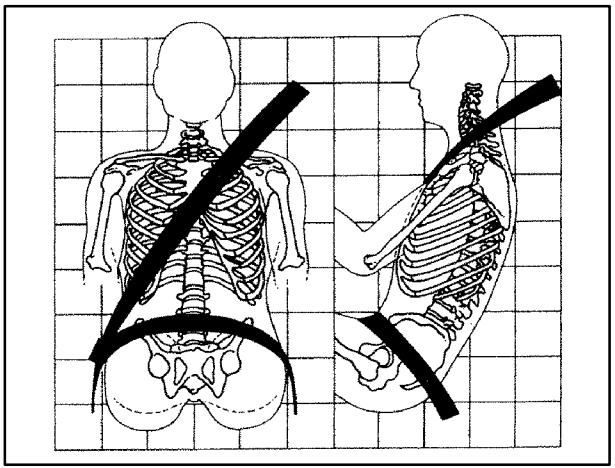
   The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt isn't long enough, see "Safety Belt Extender" at the end of this section.

   Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones. And you'd be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force at your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

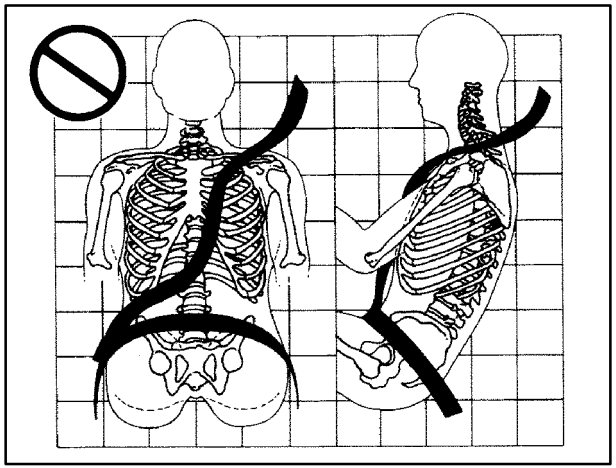
The safety belt locks if there's a sudden stop or crash, or if you pull the belt very quickly out of the retractor.

Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster

When you move a front seat head restraint, the shoulder belt height changes. See "Head Restraints" in the Index.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: **What's wrong with this?**



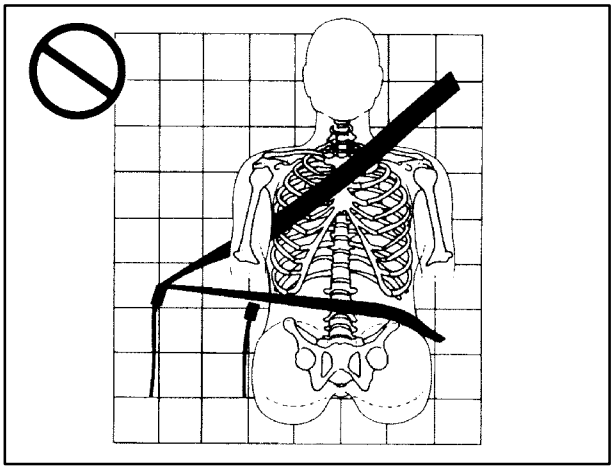
A: The shoulder belt is too loose. It won't give nearly as much protection this way.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit against your body.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: **What's wrong with this?**



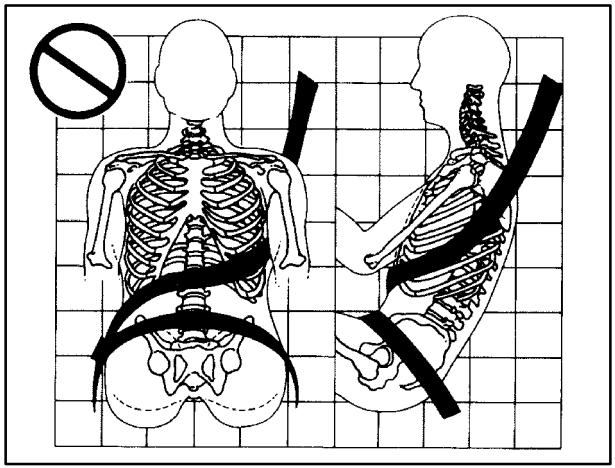
A: The belt is buckled in the wrong place.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if your belt is buckled in the wrong place like this. In a crash, the belt would go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at the pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: **What's wrong with this?**



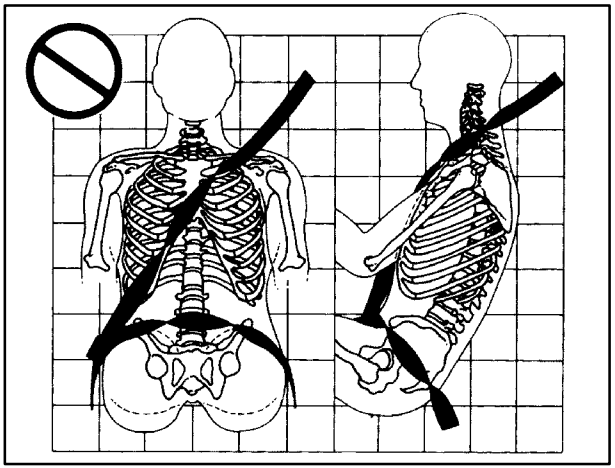
A: The shoulder belt is worn under the arm. It should be worn over the shoulder at all times.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if you wear the shoulder belt under your arm. In a crash, your body would move too far forward, which would increase the chance of head and neck injury. Also, the belt would apply too much force to the ribs, which aren't as strong as shoulder bones. You could also severely injure internal organs like your liver or spleen.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: **What's wrong with this?**



A: The belt is twisted across the body.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured by a twisted belt. In a crash, you wouldn't have the full width of the belt to spread impact forces. If a belt is twisted, make it straight so it can work properly, or ask your dealer to fix it.

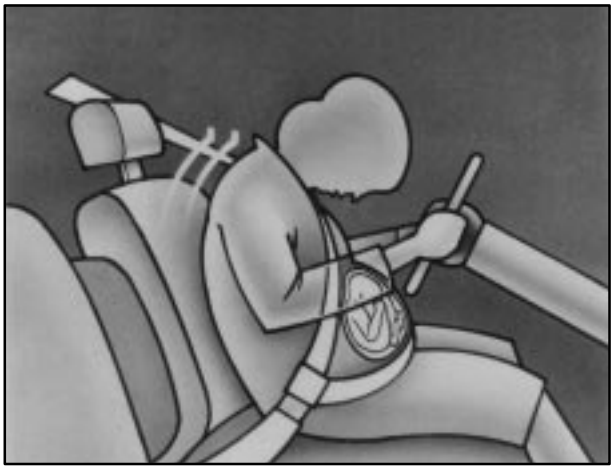
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

To unlatch the belt, just push the button on the buckle. The belt should go back out of the way.

Before you close the door, be sure the belt is out of the way. If you slam the door on it, you can damage both the belt and your vehicle.

Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they don't wear safety belts.



A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it's more likely that the fetus won't be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

Right Front Passenger Position

To learn how to wear the right front passenger's safety belt properly, see "Driver Position" earlier in this section.

The right front passenger's safety belt works the same way as the driver's safety belt -- except for one thing. If you ever pull the lap portion of the belt out all the way, you will engage the child restraint locking feature. If this happens, just let the belt go back all the way and start again.

Supplemental Inflatable Restraint (SIR) Systems

This part explains the frontal and side impact Supplemental Inflatable Restraint (SIR) systems or air bag systems.

Your vehicle has four air bags -- a frontal air bag for the driver, another frontal air bag for the right front passenger, a side impact air bag for the driver, and another side impact air bag for the right front passenger.

Frontal air bags are designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating frontal air bag. But these air bags must inflate very quickly to do their job and comply with federal regulations.

Here are the most important things to know about the air bag systems:

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you aren't wearing your safety belt -- even if you have air bags. Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Air bags are "supplemental restraints" to the safety belts. All air bags are designed to work with safety belts but don't replace them.

CAUTION: (Continued)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION: (Continued)

Frontal air bags for the driver and right front passenger are designed to work only in moderate to severe crashes where the front of your vehicle hits something. They aren't designed to inflate at all in rollover, rear, side or low-speed frontal crashes. And, for unrestrained occupants, frontal air bags may provide less protection in frontal crashes than more forceful air bags have provided in the past. The side impact air bags for the driver and right front passenger are designed to inflate only in moderate to severe crashes where something hits the side of your vehicle. They aren't designed to inflate in frontal, in rollover or in rear crashes. Everyone in your vehicle should wear a safety belt properly -- whether or not there's an air bag for that person.

⚠ CAUTION:

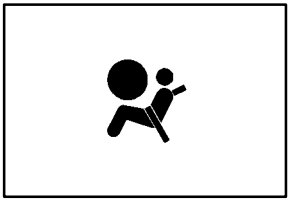
Both frontal and side impact air bags inflate with great force, faster than the blink of an eye. If you're too close to an inflating air bag, as you would be if you were leaning forward, it could seriously injure you. Safety belts help keep you in position for air bag inflation before and during a crash. Always wear your safety belt, even with frontal air bags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. Front occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Anyone who is up against, or very close to, any air bag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Air bags plus lap-shoulder belts offer the best protection for adults, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its air bag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in your vehicle. To read how, see the part of this manual called "Children."

United States



Canada

There is an air bag readiness light on the instrument panel, which shows AIR BAG or the air bag symbol.

The system checks the air bag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See "Air Bag Readiness Light" in the Index for more information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

How the Air Bag Systems Work

Where are the air bags?

The driver’s frontal air bag is in the middle of the steering wheel.

The right front passenger’s frontal air bag is in the instrument panel on the passenger’s side.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The driver’s side impact air bag is in the side of the driver’s seatback closest to the door.

The right front passenger’s side impact air bag is in the side of the passenger’s seatback closest to the door.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

> **⚠ CAUTION:**
>
> **If something is between an occupant and an air bag, the bag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person. The path of an inflating air bag must be kept clear. Don't put anything between an occupant and an air bag, and don't attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other air bag covering and don't let seat covers block the inflation path of a side impact air bag.**

When should an air bag inflate?

The driver's and right front passenger's frontal air bags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes. The frontal air bags are designed to inflate only if the impact speed is above the system's designed "threshold level." If your vehicle goes straight into a wall that doesn't move or deform, the threshold level is about 9 to 15 mph (14 to 24 km/h). The threshold level can vary, however, with specific vehicle design, so that it can be somewhat above or below this range. If your vehicle strikes something that will move or deform, such as a parked car, the threshold level will be higher. The driver's and right front passenger's frontal air bags are not designed to inflate in rollovers, side impacts, or rear impacts, because inflation would not help the occupant.

The side impact air bags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes involving a front door. A side impact air bag will inflate if the crash severity is above the system's designed "threshold level." The threshold level can vary with specific vehicle design. Side impact air bags are not designed to inflate in frontal or near-frontal impacts, rollovers or rear impacts, because inflation would not help the occupant. A side impact air bag will only deploy on the side of the vehicle that is struck.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an air bag should have inflated simply because of the damage to a vehicle or because of what the repair costs were. For frontal air bags, inflation is determined by the angle of the impact and how quickly the vehicle slows down in frontal and near-frontal impacts. For side impact air bags, inflation is determined by the location and severity of the impact.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

What makes an air bag inflate?

In an impact of sufficient severity, the air bag sensing system detects that the vehicle is in a crash. For both frontal and side impact air bags, the sensing system triggers a release of gas from the inflator, which inflates the air bag. The inflator, air bag and related hardware are all part of the air bag modules inside the steering wheel, instrument panel and the side of the front seatbacks closest to the door.

How does an air bag restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle. The air bag supplements the protection provided by safety belts. Air bags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body, stopping the occupant more gradually. But the frontal air bags would not help you in many types of collisions, including rollovers, rear impacts, and side impacts, primarily because an occupant's motion is not toward the air bag. Side impact air bags would not help you in many types of collisions, including frontal or near frontal collisions, rollovers, and rear impacts, primarily because an occupant's motion is not toward those air bags. Air bags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts, and then only in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal collisions for the driver's and right front passenger's frontal air bags, and only in moderate to severe side collisions for the driver's and right front passenger's side impact air bags.

What will you see after an air bag inflates?

After an air bag inflates, it quickly deflates, so quickly that some people may not even realize the air bag inflated. Some components of the air bag module -- the steering wheel hub for the driver's air bag, the instrument panel for the right front passenger's bag, the side of the seatback closest to the door for the driver and right front passenger's side impact air bags -- will be hot for a short time. The parts of the bag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There will be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated air bags. Air bag inflation doesn't prevent the driver from seeing or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it stop people from leaving the vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

When an air bag inflates, there is dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but can't get out of the vehicle after an air bag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door.

Your vehicle has a feature that will automatically unlock the doors and turn the interior lamps on when the air bags inflate (if battery power is available). You can lock the doors again and turn the interior lamps off by using the door lock and interior lamp controls.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate an air bag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the right front passenger air bag.

- Air bags are designed to inflate only once. After an air bag inflates, you'll need some new parts for your air bag system. If you don't get them, the air bag system won't be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include air bag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for your vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- Your vehicle is equipped with a crash sensing and diagnostic module, which records information about the frontal air bag system. The module records information about the readiness of the system, when the system commands air bag inflation and driver's safety belt usage at deployment. Some modules also record speed, engine rpm, brake and throttle data.
- Let only qualified technicians work on your air bag systems. Improper service can mean that an air bag system won't work properly. See your dealer for service.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE:

If you damage the covering for the driver's or the right front passenger's air bag, or the air bag covering on the driver's and right front passenger's seatback, the bag may not work properly. You may have to replace the air bag module in the steering wheel, both the air bag module and the instrument panel for the right front passenger's air bag, or both the air bag module and seatback for the driver's and right front passenger's side impact air bag. Do not open or break the air bag coverings.

Servicing Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle

Air bags affect how your vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the air bag systems in several places around your vehicle. Your dealer and the service manual have information about servicing your vehicle and the air bag systems. To purchase a service manual, see "Service and Owner Publications" in the Index.

⚠ CAUTION:

For up to 10 seconds after the ignition key is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an air bag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an air bag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the air bag systems. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

The air bag systems do not need regular maintenance.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Belt Pretensioners

Your vehicle has safety belt pretensioners. You'll find them on the buckle end of the safety belts for the driver and right front passenger. They help the safety belts reduce a person's forward movement in a moderate to severe crash in which the front of the vehicle hits something.

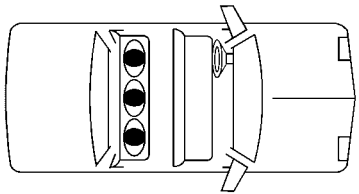
Pretensioners work only once. If they activate in a crash, you'll need to get new ones, and probably other new parts for your safety belt system. See "Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash" in the Index.

Rear Seat Passengers

It's very important for rear seat passengers to buckle up! Accident statistics show that unbelted people in the rear seat are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

Rear passengers who aren't safety belted can be thrown out of the vehicle in a crash. And they can strike others in the vehicle who are wearing safety belts.

Rear Seat Passenger Positions



Lap-Shoulder Belt

All three rear seating positions have lap-shoulder belts. Here's how to wear one properly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

1. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Don't let it get twisted.

   The shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

2. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

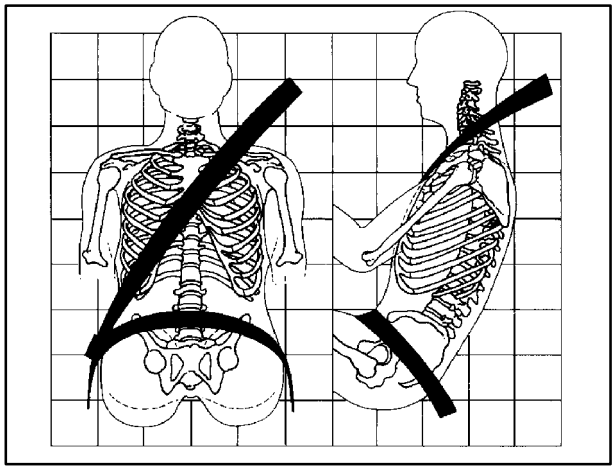
If the belt stops before it reaches the buckle, tilt the latch plate and keep pulling until you can buckle it.

Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure.

If the belt is not long enough, see "Safety Belt Extender" at the end of this section. Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. To make the lap part tight, pull down on the buckle end of the belt as you pull up on the shoulder part.



The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones. And you'd be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force at your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The safety belt locks if there's a sudden stop or a crash, or if you pull the belt very quickly out of the retractor.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit against your body.

To unlatch the belt, just push the button on the buckle.

Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! That includes infants and all children smaller than adult size. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

Smaller Children and Babies

⚠ CAUTION:

Children who are up against, or very close to, any air bag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Air bags plus lap-shoulder belts offer the best protection for adults, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its air bag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in your vehicle.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Smaller children and babies should always be restrained in a child or infant restraint. The instructions for the restraint will say whether it is the right type and size for your child. A very young child's hip bones are so small that a regular belt might not stay low on the hips, as it should. Instead, the belt will likely be over the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force right on the child's abdomen, which could cause serious or fatal injuries. So, be sure that any child small enough for one is always properly restrained in a child or infant restraint.

Infants need complete support, including support for the head and neck. This is necessary because an infant's neck is weak and its head weighs so much compared with the rest of its body. In a frontal crash, an infant in a rear-facing restraint settles into the restraint, so the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of the infant's body, the back and shoulders. A baby should be secured in an appropriate infant restraint. This is so important that many hospitals today won't release a newborn infant to its parents unless there is an infant restraint available for the baby's first trip in a motor vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Never hold a baby in your arms while riding in a vehicle. A baby doesn't weigh much -- until a crash. During a crash a baby will become so heavy you can't hold it. For example, in a crash

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

at only 25 mph (40 km/h), a 12-lb. (5.5 kg) baby will suddenly become a 240-lb. (110 kg) force on your arms. The baby would be almost impossible to hold.

Secure the baby in an infant restraint.

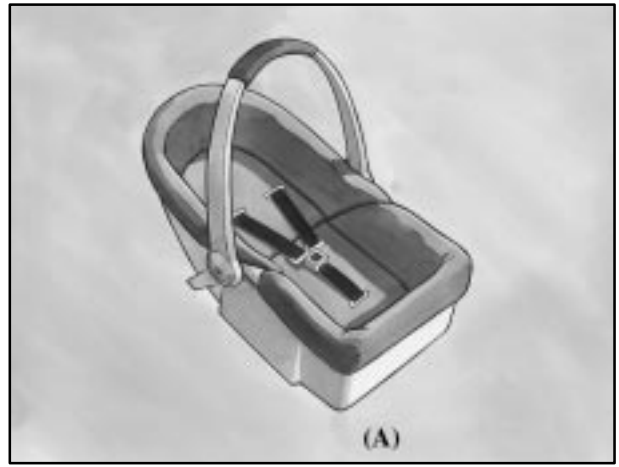
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Child Restraints

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have protection provided by appropriate restraints.

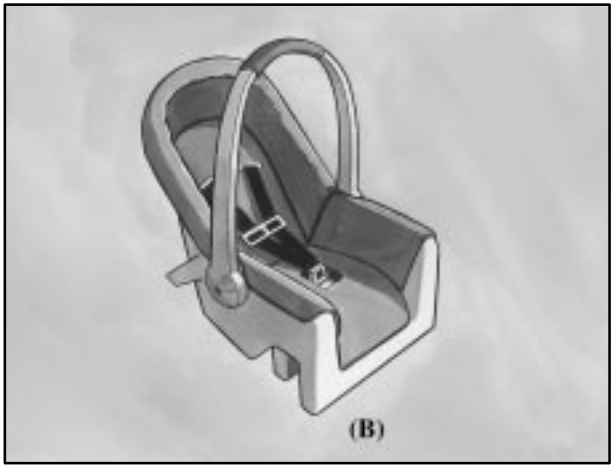
Q: **What are the different types of add-on child restraints?**

A: Add-on child restraints are available in four basic types. When selecting a child restraint, take into consideration not only the child's weight and size, but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.



An infant car bed (A) is a special bed made for use in a motor vehicle. It's an infant restraint system designed to restrain or position a child on a continuous flat surface. With an infant car bed, make sure that the infant's head rests toward the center of the vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

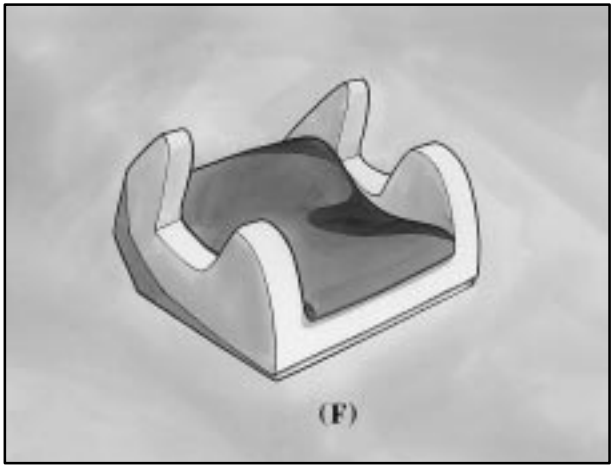


A rear-facing infant restraint (B) positions an infant to face the rear of the vehicle. Rear-facing infant restraints are designed for infants of up to about 20 lbs. (9 kg) and about one year of age. This type of restraint faces the rear so that the infant's head, neck and body can have the support they need in a frontal crash. Some infant seats come in two parts -- the base stays secured in the vehicle and the seat part is removable.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

A forward-facing child restraint (C-E) positions a child upright to face forward in the vehicle. These forward-facing restraints are designed to help protect children who are from 20 to 40 lbs. (9 to 18 kg) and about 26 to 40 inches (66 to 102 cm) in height, or up to around four years of age. One type, a convertible restraint, is designed to be used either as a rear-facing infant seat or a forward-facing child seat.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



A booster seat (F) is designed for children who are about 40 to 60 lbs., or even up to 80 lbs. (18 to 27 kg, or even up to 36 kg), and about four to eight years of age. A booster seat is designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system. Booster seats with shields use lap-only belts; however, booster seats without shields use lap-shoulder belts. Booster seats can also help a child to see out the window.

When choosing a child restraint, be sure the child restraint is designed to be used in a vehicle. If it is, it will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

Then follow the instructions for the restraint. You may find these instructions on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both. These restraints use the belt system in your vehicle, but the child also has to be secured within the restraint to help reduce the chance of personal injury. The instructions that come with the infant or child restraint will show you how to do that. Both the owner's manual and the child restraint instructions are important, so if either one of these is not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Where to Put the Restraint

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. We at General Motors therefore recommend that you put your child restraint in the rear seat. *Never* put a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat. Here's why:

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

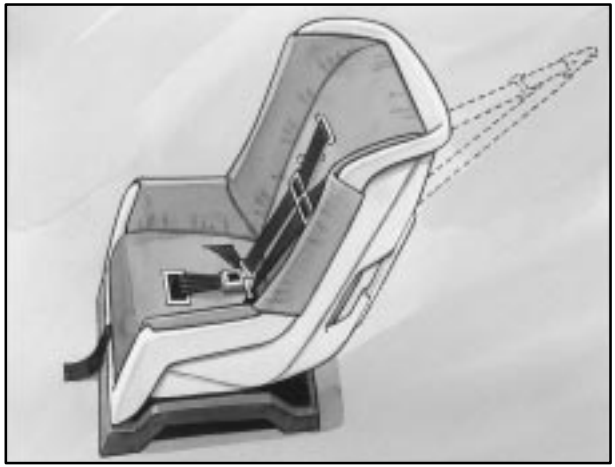
A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's air bag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating air bag. Always secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat.

You may secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, but before you do, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It's better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

Wherever you install it, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle -- even when no child is in it.

Top Strap

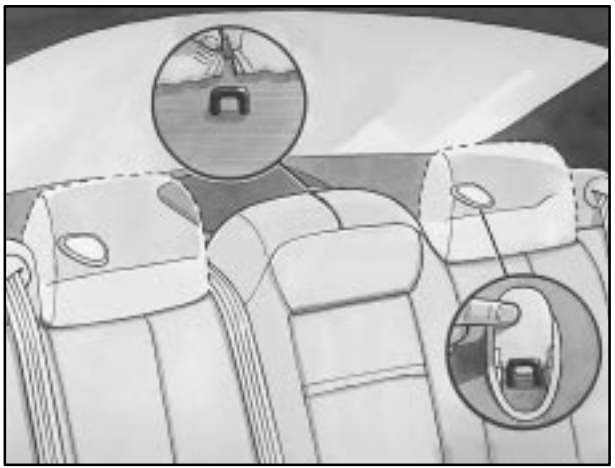


In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top strap, and that the strap be anchored. In the United States, some child restraints also have a top strap. If your child restraint has a top strap, it should be anchored.

Your vehicle has top strap anchors already installed for the rear seating positions. You'll find the two rear outboard anchors behind the rear seat on the filler panel.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

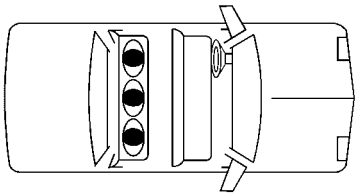
In order to get to one of these brackets, you'll have to open the trim cover. When using a top strap-equipped child restraint in a rear outboard position, be sure to route the top strap under the head restraint.



The top strap anchor for the center rear seating position is located at the top of the seat. In order to get to this bracket, you'll have to unzip the seat cover.

Anchor the top strap to this bracket. Once you have the top strap anchored, you'll be ready to secure the child restraint itself.

Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position



You'll be using the lap-shoulder belt. See the earlier part about the top strap if the child restraint has one. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

1. Put the restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

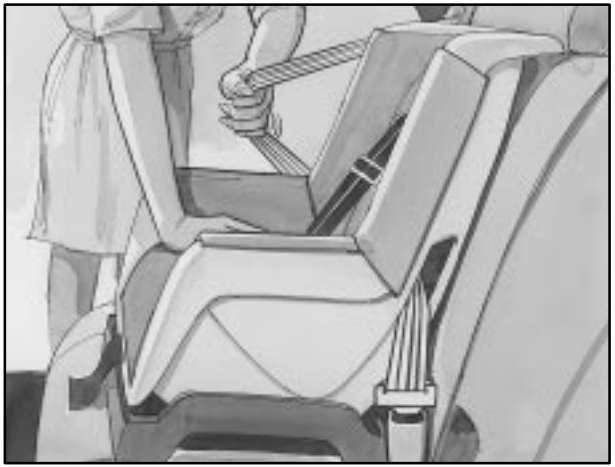
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tilt the latch plate to adjust the belt if needed.

If the shoulder belt goes in front of the child's face or neck, put it behind the child restraint.

3. Buckle the belt. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

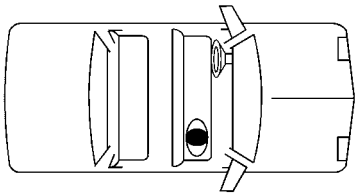


4. To tighten the belt, pull up on the shoulder belt while you push down on the child restraint. If you're using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

5. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, just unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way. The safety belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or larger child passenger.

Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position



Your vehicle has a right front passenger air bag. *Never* put a rear-facing child restraint in this seat. Here's why:

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's air bag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating air bag. Always secure a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat.

Although a rear seat is a safer place, you can secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat.

You'll be using the lap-shoulder belt. See the earlier part about the top strap if the child restraint has one. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

1. Because your vehicle has a right front passenger air bag, always move the seat as far back as it will go before securing a forward-facing child restraint. (See "Seats" in the Index.)
2. Put the restraint on the seat.
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

   If the shoulder belt goes in front of the child's face or neck, put it behind the child restraint.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Buckle the belt. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.

5. Pull the rest of the lap belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

6. To tighten the belt, feed the lap belt back into the retractor while you push down on the child restraint. You may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
7. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, just unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way. The safety belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or larger child passenger.

Larger Children

Children who have outgrown child restraints should wear the vehicle's safety belts.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear seat. But they need to use the safety belts properly.

- Children who aren't buckled up can be thrown out in a crash.
- Children who aren't buckled up can strike other people who are.

⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Here two children are wearing the same belt. The belt can't properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, the two children can be crushed together and seriously injured. A belt must be used by only one person at a time.

Q: **What if a child is wearing a lap-shoulder belt, but the child is so small that the shoulder belt is very close to the child's face or neck?**

A: If the child is sitting in a seat next to a window, move the child toward the center of the vehicle. If the child is sitting in the center rear seat passenger position, move the child toward the safety belt buckle. In either case, be sure that the shoulder belt still is on the child's shoulder, so that in a crash the child's upper body would have the restraint that belts provide.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Here a child is sitting in a seat that has a lap-shoulder belt, but the shoulder part is behind the child. If the child wears the belt in this way, in a crash the child might slide under the belt. The belt's force would then be applied right on the child's abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries.

The lap portion of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the child's thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Belt Extender

If the vehicle's safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt isn't long enough to fasten, your dealer will order you an extender. It's free. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. The extender will be just for you, and just for the seat in your vehicle that you choose. Don't let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. To wear it, just attach it to the regular safety belt.

Checking Your Restraint Systems

Now and then, make sure the safety belt reminder light and all your belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors and anchorages are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired.

Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Also look for any opened or broken air bag covers, and have them repaired or replaced. (The air bag system does not need regular maintenance.)

Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash

If you've had a crash, do you need new belts?

After a very minor collision, nothing may be necessary. But if the belts were stretched, as they would be if worn during a more severe crash, then you need new belts.

If belts are cut or damaged, replace them. Collision damage also may mean you will need to have safety belt or seat parts repaired or replaced. New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the belt wasn't being used at the time of the collision.

If an air bag inflates, you'll need to replace air bag system parts. See the part on the air bag system earlier in this section.

If the frontal air bags inflate, you'll also need to replace the driver's and right front passenger's safety belt buckle assembly. Be sure to do so. Then the new buckle assembly will be there to help protect you in a collision.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 2 Features and Controls

Here you can learn about the many standard and optional features on your vehicle, and information on starting, shifting and braking. Also explained are the instrument panel and the warning systems that tell you if everything is working properly -- and what to do if you have a problem.

2-2 Keys
2-4 Door Locks
2-7 Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System
2-10 Trunk
2-13 Theft
2-14 Theft-Deterrent System
2-16 PASS-Key® III
2-18 New Vehicle “Break-In”
2-18 Ignition Positions
2-19 Starting Your Engine
2-21 Engine Coolant Heater (If Equipped)
2-22 Automatic Transaxle Operation
2-26 Parking Brake
2-27 Shifting Into PARK (P)
2-29 Shifting Out of PARK (P)
2-30 Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) (Option)
2-31 Parking Over Things That Burn
2-32 Engine Exhaust
2-32 Running Your Engine While You’re Parked
2-33 Windows
2-34 Tilt Wheel
2-36 Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever
2-43 Exterior Lamps
2-48 Interior Lamps
2-50 Mirrors
2-54 Storage Compartments
2-57 Sun Visors
2-59 Sunroof (Option)
2-60 HomeLink® Transmitter (Option)
2-64 The Instrument Panel -- Your Information System
2-69 Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators
2-79 Driver Information Center (DIC)
2-94 Navigation (Option)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

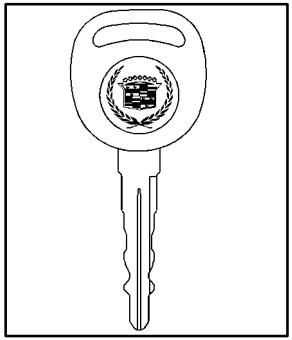
Keys

⚠ CAUTION:

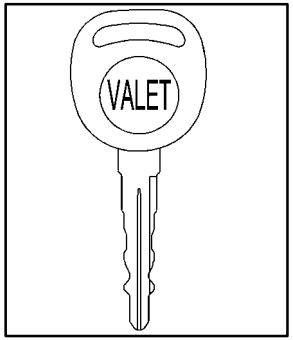
Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons. A child or others could be badly injured or even killed.

They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. If they turned the ignition to ACC or ON and moved the shift lever out of PARK (P), that would release the parking brake. Don't leave the keys in a vehicle with children.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



Master Key



Valet Key

There is a master key that works in all of the lock cylinders (driver's door, trunk, ignition and glove box). There is also a valet key which only operates the driver's door and the ignition.

Both the master and valet keys have a transponder embedded into the key for security and theft deterrence. The keys also come with a bar code tag. Keep the bar code tag in a safe place. If you lose your key you will be able to have a new one made using the bar code tag. The replacement key must have a transponder embedded in it.

NOTICE:

Your vehicle has a number of new features that can help prevent theft. You can have a lot of trouble getting into your vehicle if you ever lock your key inside and you may have to damage your vehicle to get in. Be sure you have an extra key.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Door Locks

⚠ CAUTION:

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

Passengers -- especially children -- can easily open the doors and fall out. When a door is locked, the inside handle won't open it.

Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop your vehicle.

This may not be so obvious: You increase the chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash if the doors aren't locked. Wear safety belts properly, lock your doors, and you will be far better off whenever you drive your vehicle.

There are several ways to lock and unlock your vehicle. From the outside, use either the key or the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

Because your vehicle has the theft-deterrent system, you must unlock the doors with the key or RKE transmitter to avoid setting off the alarm.

The manual lock is located on the top of the door panel near the window. Push the manual lock lever down to lock the door from the inside. To unlock the door, raise the lock lever.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Central Door Unlocking System

When unlocking the driver's door, you can unlock the other doors by holding the key in the turned position for a few seconds or by quickly turning the key twice in the lock cylinder.

Power Door Locks

The power door lock switch is located on each front door. Press the top of the switch to unlock all of the doors at once. Press the down arrow (LOCK V) to lock the doors.

The rear power door lock switches only provide a lock function as a safety feature. They will not unlock the doors.

Automatic Door Locks

Close your doors and turn on the ignition. If all of the doors are closed, every time you move the shift lever out of PARK (P), all of the doors will lock. The doors will unlock every time you stop the vehicle and move the shift lever back into PARK (P). If someone needs to get out while your vehicle is not in PARK (P), have that person use the manual or power door locks. When the door is closed again, it will not lock automatically. Use the manual or power door locks to lock the door again. If you need to lock the doors before shifting out of PARK (P), use the manual or power door locks.

Programmable Automatic Door Locks

With the vehicle in PARK (P) and the ignition in ON, the door locks can be programmed through prompts displayed by the Driver Information Center (DIC). These prompts allow the driver to choose various lock and unlock settings. For programming information, see "Vehicle Programming and Personalization Features" in the Index.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Door Security Lock

Your vehicle is equipped with rear door security locks that help prevent passengers from opening the rear doors of your vehicle from the inside. The locks are located on the inside edge of each rear door.

To Use One of These Locks

1. Move the lever on the door all the way up to the ENGAGED position.
2. Close the door.
3. Do the same thing to the other rear door lock.

The rear doors of your vehicle cannot be opened from the inside when this feature is in use.

To Open a Rear Door with the Security Lock

1. You may unlock the door by using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, the front door power lock switch or by lifting the rear door manual lock.
2. Then open the door from the outside.

To Cancel the Rear Door Lock

1. You may unlock the rear door by using the RKE transmitter, the front door power lock switch or by lifting the rear door manual lock. Open the door from the outside.
2. Move the lever all the way down.
3. Do the same for the other rear door.

The rear door locks will now work normally.

Anti-Lockout Feature

Leaving your key in any ignition position with any door open will disable the use of the power door locks and the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) lock function. If you close the doors, you can lock them using the power door locks or the RKE system. It is always recommended that you remove the ignition key when locking your vehicle.

The anti-lockout feature can be overridden by holding the power door lock switch for three seconds or longer.

Leaving Your Vehicle

If you are leaving the vehicle, open the door, set the locks from the inside, get out and close the door.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

With this feature, you can lock and unlock the doors, unlock the trunk, open the fuel door and turn on your vehicle's interior lamps from about 3 feet (1 m) up to 30 feet (9 m) away using the RKE transmitter supplied with your vehicle.

Your Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system is intended to be used as an added vehicle entry device. It is not intended to replace a door key. It operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

The range of this system is from about 3 feet (1 m) up to 30 feet (9 m). At times you may notice a decrease in range. This is normal for any RKE system. If the transmitter does not work or if you have to stand closer to your vehicle for the transmitter to work, try this:

- Check the distance. You may be too far from your vehicle. You may need to stand closer during rainy or snowy weather.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal. Take a few steps to the left or right, hold the transmitter higher, and try again.
- Check to determine if battery replacement is necessary. See the instructions that follow.
- If you're still having trouble, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Operation

When you press this button to unlock the driver's door, the parking lamps on your vehicle will flash twice. (You can program your vehicle so the parking lamps will not flash. For more information, see "Vehicle Programming and Personalization Features" in the Index.) Pressing this button again within one to five seconds will unlock the other doors. Pressing this button will also disarm the theft-deterrent system and turn on the interior lamps at night.

When you press this button to lock the doors, the parking lamps will flash once and the horn will sound once. (You can program your vehicle so the parking lamps will not flash and/or the horn will not sound. For more information, see "Vehicle Programming and Personalization Features" in the Index.) This also arms the theft-deterrent system when the ignition is turned off.

Press this button to open the trunk. (The valet lock switch must be in the OFF position.)

Press this button to open the fuel door. (The valet lock switch must be in the OFF position.)

The numbers on the back of the RKE transmitter correspond to Driver 1 and Driver 2. See "Vehicle Programming and Personalization Features " in the Index.

Remote confirmation is not operational if any door is open.

The RKE transmitter can also be used to recall the memory seats for up to two drivers. For more information, see"Memory Seat, Mirrors and Steering Wheel" in the Index.

Matching Transmitter(s) To Your Vehicle

Each remote keyless entry transmitter is coded to prevent another transmitter from unlocking your vehicle. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased through your dealer. Once your dealer has coded the new transmitter, the lost transmitter will not unlock your vehicle. Each vehicle can have only up to four transmitters matched to it.

All transmitters must be present when replacement or additional transmitters are being programmed.

Battery Replacement

Under normal use, the battery in your transmitter should last about two years.

You can tell the battery is weak if the transmitter won't work at the normal range in any location. If you have to get close to your vehicle before the transmitter works, it's probably time to change the battery.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE:

When replacing the battery, use care not to touch any of the circuitry. Static from your body transferred to these surfaces may damage the transmitter.

1. Use a coin (or a similar object) to pry open the transmitter.

2. Once the transmitter is separated, use a pencil (or a similar object) to remove the old battery. Do not use a metal object.
3. Insert the new battery as the instructions under the cover indicate.
4. Snap the transmitter back together tightly to be sure no moisture can enter.
5. Resynchronize the transmitter. See the instructions that follow.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Resynchronization

Pressing the transmitter buttons numerous times (approximately 250 times) out of the vehicle's operating range may cause the transmitter not to work. Replacing the battery and pressing the transmitter buttons out of range will also cause the transmitter not to work. If only the fuel door button works, the transmitter needs to be resynchronized to the receiver. Do this by pressing and holding both the lock and unlock buttons on the transmitter for about eight seconds. You must be within range of the vehicle.

Once the transmitter has been resynchronized, the horn will sound and the exterior lamps will flash once. The system should now operate properly. See your dealer for service if your transmitter still doesn't work properly.

Trunk

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to drive with the trunk lid open because carbon monoxide (CO) gas can come into your vehicle. You can't see or smell CO. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If you must drive with the trunk lid open or if electrical wiring or other cable connections must pass through the seal between the body and the trunk lid:

- **Make sure all other windows are shut.**
- **Turn the fan on your heating or cooling system to its highest speed with the setting on AUTO and the temperature between 65°F (18°C) and 85°F (29°C). That will force outside air into your vehicle. See "Comfort Controls" in the Index.**
- **If you have air outlets on or under the instrument panel, open them all the way.**

See "Engine Exhaust" in the Index.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Trunk Lock Release

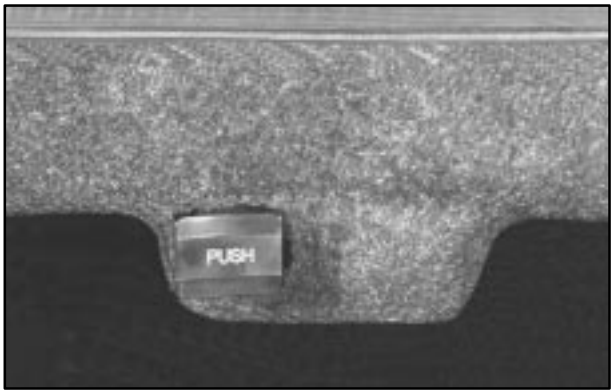
The trunk lock release button is located on the left side of the instrument panel below the lamp controls.

To use this feature, your vehicle must be in PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) (if the ignition is on) and the VALET lockout button must be in the OFF position.

To open the trunk, press the trunk lock release button upward.

You can also press the trunk release button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to access the trunk compartment.

Rear Seat Pass-Through Door (If Equipped)



The rear seat pass-through release button is located in the trunk. To release the pass-through door, press the PUSH button located in the center of the trunk panel.

The rear-seat armrest must be down for the pass-through door to open. You may close the door from inside the vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

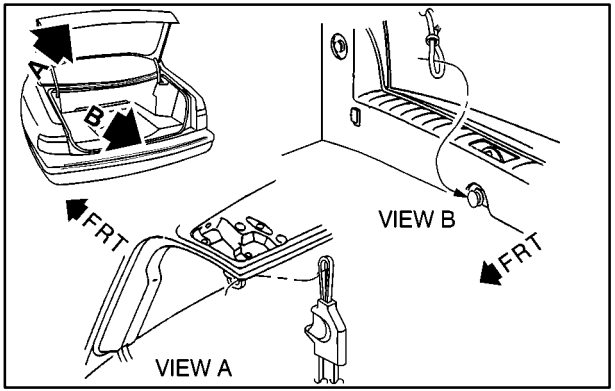
Trunk Lid Tie Down (If Equipped)

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving with the trunk lid open can allow dangerous CO (carbon monoxide) gas to come into your vehicle. You can't see or smell CO. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. If you ever need to drive with your trunk lid open, then:

- **Make sure all windows, the rear seat pass-through and sunroof are closed.**
- **Turn the fan on your heating and cooling system to its highest speed, with the setting on VENT. This forces fresh outside air into your vehicle.**
- **Open all air ducts on the instrument panel.**

Don't use the trunk lid tie down if you are towing a trailer because of the danger of CO.



This feature is used to secure the trunk lid if it will not close completely, such as when carrying large packages in the trunk.

1. Attach the end loop of the tie down to the retainer located at the center of the trunk sill (see view B).
2. Attach the clip end of the tie down to the D-ring on the trunk lid (see view A).
3. Tighten the tie down by pulling the free end of the cord until secure.
4. To remove the tie down, press the clip end to release and loosen the cord.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Theft

Vehicle theft is big business, especially in some cities. Although your vehicle has a number of theft-deterrent features, we know that nothing we put on it can make it impossible to steal. However, there are ways you can help.

Key in the Ignition

If you leave your vehicle with the keys inside, it's an easy target for joy riders or professional thieves -- so don't do it.

When you park your vehicle and open the driver's door, you'll hear a chime reminding you to remove your key from the ignition and take it with you. Always do this. Your steering wheel will be locked, and so will your ignition and transaxle. And remember to lock the doors.

Parking at Night

Park in a lighted spot, close all windows and lock your vehicle. Remember to keep your valuables out of sight. Put them in a storage area, or take them with you.

Parking Lots

If you park in a lot where someone will be watching your vehicle, it's best to lock it up and take your keys. But what if you have to leave your ignition key?

- If possible, park in a busy, well lit area.
- Put your valuables in a storage area, like your trunk or glove box. Be sure to close and lock the storage area.
- Close all windows.
- Move the trunk release lockout switch to ON.
- Lock the glove box.
- Lock all the doors except the driver's.
- Then take the door key and remote keyless entry transmitter with you.
- Lock all doors except the driver's.
- Give the valet key to the valet. Then take the master key with you.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Theft-Deterrent System

If the ignition is off and any door is open, the SECURITY light will flash, reminding you to arm the system.

To arm the system, do the following:

1. Open the door.
2. Lock the door using the power door lock switch with the door open or the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system. The SECURITY light should come on and stay on.
3. Close all the doors. The SECURITY light should go off within approximately 30 seconds.

When the theft system activates, the horn will sound and the lamps will flash for about 30 seconds when the door or trunk is opened without the key or RKE system.

Remember, the theft-deterrent system won't arm if you lock the doors with a key or use the manual door lock. It activates only if you use a power door lock with the door open or the RKE system.

To avoid activating the alarm by accident:

- The vehicle should be locked with the door key or the manual door lock *after* the doors are closed if you don't want to arm the theft-deterrent system.
- Always unlock a door with a key or use the RKE system. (Pressing the unlock button on the RKE transmitter disables the theft-deterrent system.) Unlocking a door any other way will activate the alarm when a door or the trunk is opened.

If you activate the alarm by accident, unlock the driver's door with your key. You can also turn off the alarm by using the unlock button on the RKE system, or by starting the car with a valid key.

Changes or modifications made to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use the theft system.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Testing the Alarm

1. From inside the vehicle, roll down the window, then get out of the vehicle, keeping the door open.
2. From outside of the vehicle, with the door open, lock the vehicle using the power door lock or the RKE system and close the door. Wait 30 seconds until the SECURITY lamp goes off.
3. Reach in and unlock the door using the manual lock and open the door. The horn will sound and the hazard lights will flash.

You can turn off the alarm by unlocking the driver's door with your key, using the unlock button on the RKE transmitter or by starting the car with a valid key.

If the alarm does not sound when it should, check to see if the horn works. The horn fuse may be blown. To replace the fuse, see "Fuses and Circuit Breakers" in the Index. If the fuse does not need to be replaced, you may need to have your vehicle serviced.

To reduce the possibility of theft, always arm the theft-deterrent system when leaving your vehicle.

Valet Lock

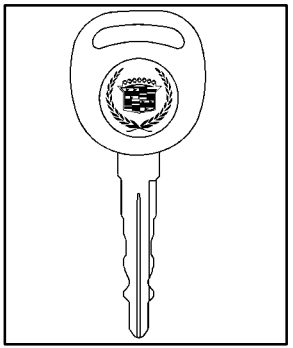
This switch is located inside the glove box on the left side. Pressing this switch to ON will disable the use of the trunk, fuel door and garage door opener.

Pressing this switch to OFF will enable these features for use.

Locking the glove box with your key will also help to secure your vehicle. Note that the RKE transmitter can't open the trunk or fuel door if the valet lock switch is in the ON position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

PASS-Key® III



Your vehicle is equipped with the PASS-Key III (Personalized Automotive Security System) theft-deterrent system. PASS-Key III is a passive theft-deterrent system. This means you don't have to do anything different to arm or disarm the system. It works when you insert or remove the key from the ignition.

Your PASS-Key III system operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

PASS-Key III uses a radio frequency transponder in the key that matches a decoder in your vehicle.

When the PASS-Key III system senses that someone is using the wrong key, it shuts down the vehicle's starter and fuel systems. The starter will not work and fuel will stop being delivered to the engine. Anyone using a trial-and-error method to start the vehicle will be discouraged because of the high number of electrical key codes.

When trying to start the vehicle and the engine does not start and the SECURITY light comes on, the key may have a damaged transponder. Turn the ignition off and try again.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If the engine does not start and the key appears to be undamaged, try another ignition key. At this time, you may also want to check the fuse (see “Fuses and Circuit Breakers” in the Index). If the engine still does not start with the other key, your vehicle needs service. If your vehicle does start, the first key may be faulty. See your dealer or a locksmith who can service the PASS-Key III to have a new key made.

It is possible for the PASS-Key III decoder to learn the transponder value of a new or replacement key. Up to ten additional keys may be programmed for the vehicle. This procedure is for learning additional keys only. If all the currently programmed keys are lost or do not operate, you must see your dealer or locksmith who can service PASS-Key III to have keys made and programmed to the system.

See your dealer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key III to get a new blank key that is cut exactly as a current black colored driver’s key that operates the system. Do not use the gray colored valet key for this procedure.

To program the new key:

1. Insert the current driver’s key (black in color) in the ignition and start the engine. If the engine will not start, see your dealer for service.
2. After the engine has started, turn the key to OFF and remove the key.
3. Insert the key to be programmed and turn it to RUN within ten seconds of removing the previous key.
4. The SECURITY light will turn off once the key has been programmed. It may not be apparent that the SECURITY light went on due to how quickly the key is programmed.
5. Repeat the Steps 1 through 4 if additional keys are to be programmed.

If you are ever driving and the SECURITY light comes on and stays on, you will be able to start your engine if you turn it off. Your PASS-Key III system, however, is not working properly and must be serviced by your dealer. Your vehicle is not protected by the PASS-Key III system at this time.

If you lose or damage a PASS-Key III key, see your dealer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key III to have a new key made.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

New Vehicle “Break-In”

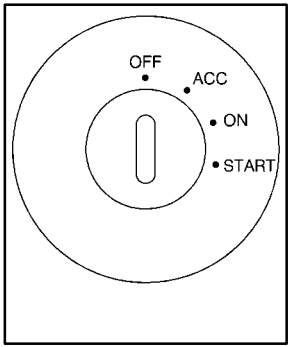
NOTICE:

Your vehicle doesn’t need an elaborate “break-in.” But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:

- **Don’t drive at any one speed -- fast or slow -- for the first 500 miles (805 km). Don’t make full-throttle starts.**
- **Avoid making hard stops for the first 200 miles (322 km) or so. During this time your new brake linings aren’t yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.**
- **Don’t tow a trailer during break-in. See “Towing a Trailer” in the Index for more information.**

Ignition Positions

With the key in the ignition switch, you can turn the key to four different positions:



OFF: This position lets you turn off the engine and remove the key. This position also locks the steering wheel and transaxle.

NOTICE:

If your key seems stuck in OFF and you can’t turn it, be sure you are using the correct key; if so, is it all the way in? Turn the key only with your hand. Using a tool to force it could break the key or the ignition switch. If none of this works, then your vehicle needs service.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

ACC: This position lets you use things like the radio, windshield wipers, power windows and sunroof (option) when the engine is off. Use ACC if you must have your vehicle in motion while the engine is off (for example, if your vehicle is being pushed).

ON: This is the position for driving.

START: This position starts the engine.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The following accessories on your vehicle may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition key is turned from ON to OFF:

- Cellular Phone (If Equipped)
- Radio
- Power Windows
- Audio Steering Wheel Controls
- Sunroof (Option)

Power to these accessories stops after 10 minutes or if any door is opened. If you want power for another 10 minutes, close all the doors and turn the ignition key to ON and then back to OFF. If the cellular phone is being used while Retained Accessory Power is in effect, the timer is suspended (to avoid interruption of the call). The timer resets to 10 minutes at the end of the call.

Starting Your Engine

Move your shift lever to PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). Your engine won't start in any other position -- that's a safety feature. To restart when you're already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only.

NOTICE:

Don't try to shift to PARK (P) if your vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transaxle. Shift to PARK (P) only when your vehicle is stopped.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Starting Your Northstar V8 Engine

1. Without pushing the accelerator pedal, turn your ignition key to START. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will go down as your engine gets warm.

NOTICE:

Holding your key in START for longer than 15 seconds at a time will cause your battery to be drained much sooner. And the excessive heat can damage your starter motor. Wait about 15 seconds between each try to help avoid draining your battery or damaging your starter.

2. If it doesn't start right away, hold your key in START for about three seconds at a time until your engine starts. Wait about 15 seconds between each try to help avoid draining your battery or damaging your starter.

3. If your engine still won't start (or starts but then stops), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing your accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START for about three seconds. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing.

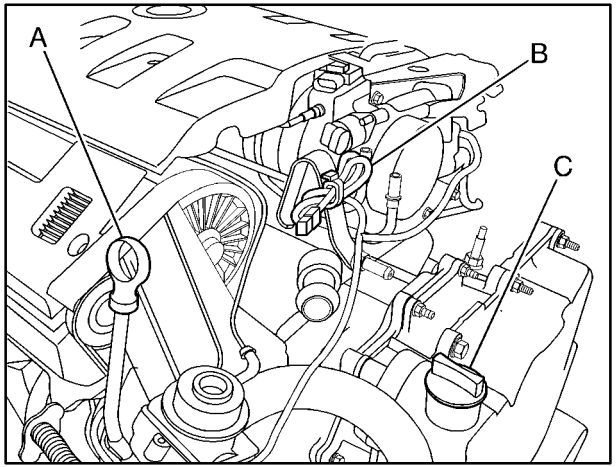
NOTICE:

Your engine is designed to work with the electronics in your vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer. If you don't, your engine might not perform properly.

If you ever have to have your vehicle towed, see the part of this manual that tells how to do it without damaging your vehicle. See "Towing Your Vehicle" in the Index.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Coolant Heater (If Equipped)



A. Engine Oil Dipstick Location

B. Engine Coolant Heater Cord

C. Transaxle Dipstick/Fluid Fill Location

In very cold weather, 0°F (-18°C) or colder, the engine coolant heater can help. You'll get easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up. Usually, the coolant heater should be plugged in a minimum of four hours prior to starting your vehicle.

To Use the Engine Coolant Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord.

   The electrical cord is located on the driver's side of the engine, behind the transaxle dipstick/fluid fill location (C) and next to the engine.
3. Plug it into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Plugging the cord into an ungrounded outlet could cause an electrical shock. Also, the wrong kind of extension cord could overheat and cause a fire. You could be seriously injured. Plug the cord into a properly grounded three-prong 110-volt AC outlet. If the cord won't reach, use a heavy-duty three-prong extension cord rated for at least 15 amps.

4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts. If you don't, it could be damaged.

How long should you keep the coolant heater plugged in? The answer depends on the outside temperature, the kind of oil you have, and some other things. Instead of trying to list everything here, we ask that you contact your dealer in the area where you'll be parking your vehicle. The dealer can give you the best advice for that particular area.

Automatic Transaxle Operation

There are several different positions for the shift lever.

PARK (P): This locks the front wheels. It's the best position to use when you start the engine because your vehicle can't move easily.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

It is dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll.

Don't leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle won't move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake and move the shift lever to PARK (P).

See "Shifting Into PARK (P)" in the Index. If you're pulling a trailer, see "Towing a Trailer" in the Index.

Ensure the shift lever is fully in PARK (P) before starting the engine. Your vehicle has an automatic transaxle shift lock control system. You have to fully *apply* your regular brakes *before* you can shift from PARK (P) when the ignition key is in ON. If you cannot shift the shift lever all the way into PARK (P), ease pressure on the shift lever and push the shift lever all the way into PARK (P) as you maintain brake application. Then move the shift lever into the gear you wish. See "Shifting Out of PARK (P)" in the Index.

REVERSE (R): Use this gear to back up.

NOTICE:

Shifting to REVERSE (R) while your vehicle is moving forward could damage your transaxle. Shift to REVERSE (R) only after your vehicle has stopped.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Also use this gear to rock your vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice or sand without damaging your transaxle. See “If You’re Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow” in the Index for additional information.

NEUTRAL (N): In this position, the engine doesn’t connect with the wheels. To restart when you’re already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only. Also use NEUTRAL (N) when your vehicle is being towed.

⚠ CAUTION:

Shifting out of PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) while your engine is “racing” (running at high speed) is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, your vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Don’t shift out of PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) while your engine is racing.

OVERDRIVE (D): This position is for normal driving. If you need more power for passing, and you’re:

- Going less than 35 mph (55 km/h), push the accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 35 mph (55 km/h) or more, push the accelerator all the way down.

  The transaxle will shift down to the next gear and have more power.

NOTICE:

If your vehicle seems to start up rather slowly, or if it doesn’t seem to shift gears as you accelerate, something may be wrong with a transaxle system sensor. If you drive very far that way, your vehicle can be damaged. So if this happens, have your vehicle serviced right away. Until then, you can use SECOND (2) when you are driving less than 35 mph (55 km/h) and OVERDRIVE (D) for higher speeds.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

THIRD (3): This position is also used for normal driving, however, it offers more power and lower fuel economy than OVERDRIVE (D).

Here are examples for using THIRD (3) instead of OVERDRIVE (D):

- When driving on hilly, winding roads.
- When going down a steep hill.

SECOND (2): This position gives you more power. You can use SECOND (2) on hills. It can help control your speed as you go down steep mountain roads, but then you would also want to use your brakes off and on.

NOTICE:

Don't shift into SECOND (2) unless you are going slower than 65 mph (105 km/h), or you can damage your engine.

FIRST (1): This position gives you even more power than SECOND (2). You can use it on very steep hills, or in deep snow or mud.

If the traction control switch is off, your vehicle will not go into FIRST (1) gear and the vehicle will accelerate from stop more slowly. This can help in deep snow or mud conditions. When the traction control is turned off, a message will be lit on the Driver Information Center (DIC).

NOTICE:

If your front wheels can't rotate, don't try to drive. This might happen if you were stuck in very deep sand or mud or were up against a solid object. You could damage your transaxle.

Also, if you stop when going uphill, don't hold your vehicle there with only the accelerator pedal. This could cause overheating and damage the transaxle. Use your brakes to hold your vehicle in position on a hill.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Performance Shift Display (STS Only)

When your vehicle detects a change in driving conditions, it will automatically initiate the appropriate performance shift mode. When this occurs, the gear display on the instrument panel cluster will change to indicate that the transmission has shifted to a different gear. For example, the gear display on the cluster may indicate D, 3, 2, or 1 even though the gearshift lever is still in OVERDRIVE (D). Once the performance shift mode ends, the gear display on the cluster will return to matching the gearshift lever indication.

Parking Brake

Hold the regular brake pedal down with your right foot and push the parking brake pedal down with your left foot to set the parking brake. If the ignition is on, the BRAKE indicator light should come on. If it doesn't, you need to have your vehicle serviced.

If the parking brake has not been fully released and you try to drive with the parking brake on, the BRAKE indicator light comes on and stays on. See "Brake System Warning and Park Brake Indicator Light" in the Index for more information.

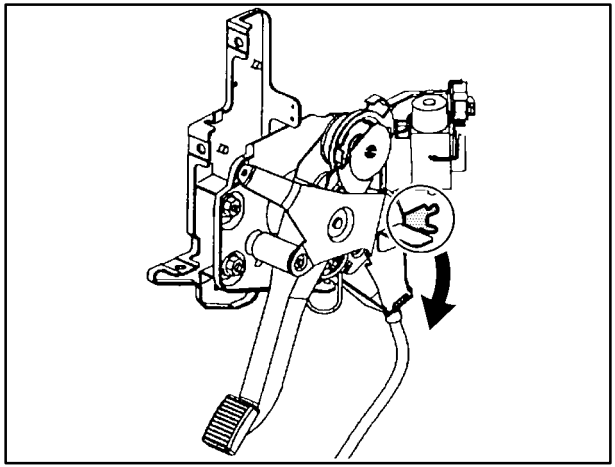
When you shift out of PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) and the engine is on, the parking brake should release. If it doesn't, you can manually release the parking brake.

⚠ CAUTION:

Always shift to PARK (P) before pulling the manual release lever. If your hand or arm is in the way of the pedal you could be hurt. The pedal springs back quickly. Keep your hand and arm away when you use the manual release lever.

Before releasing the manual parking brake, be sure to put the vehicle in PARK (P) and turn the ignition to OFF.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



Reach under the driver's side of the instrument panel and pull down on the manual release lever, which is located behind the parking brake pedal. Pull down on the yellow tab as shown by the arrow in the illustration. If the parking brake does not release, you should have your vehicle towed to your dealer for service.

NOTICE:

Driving with the parking brake on can cause your rear brakes to overheat. You may have to replace them and you could also damage other parts of your vehicle.

If you are towing a trailer and are parking on a hill, see "Towing a Trailer" in the Index.

Shifting Into PARK (P)

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle won't move, even when you're on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow. If you're pulling a trailer, see "Towing a Trailer" in the Index.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Console Shift Lever

1. Hold the brake pedal down with your right foot.

2. Move the shift lever into PARK (P) by pushing the lever all the way toward the front of your vehicle.

3. With your right foot still holding the brake pedal down, set the parking brake.
4. Turn the ignition key to OFF.
5. Remove the key and take it with you. If you can leave your vehicle with the ignition key in your hand, your vehicle is in PARK (P).

Leaving Your Vehicle With the Engine Running

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to leave your vehicle with the engine running. Your vehicle could move suddenly if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. And, if you leave the vehicle with the engine running, it could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Don't leave your vehicle with the engine running unless you have to.

If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, be sure your vehicle is in PARK (P) and your parking brake is firmly set before you leave it.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Torque Lock

If you are parking on a hill and you don't shift your transaxle into PARK (P) properly, the weight of the vehicle may put too much force on the parking pawl in the transaxle. You may find it difficult to pull the shift lever out of PARK (P). This is called "torque lock." To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into PARK (P) properly before you leave the driver's seat. To find out how, see "Shifting Into PARK (P)" in the Index.

If torque lock does occur, you may need to have another vehicle push yours a little uphill to take some of the pressure from the parking pawl in the transaxle, so you can pull the shift lever out of PARK (P).

Shifting Out of PARK (P)

Your vehicle has an automatic transaxle shift lock control system. You have to fully apply your regular brakes before you can shift from PARK (P) when the ignition is ON. See "Automatic Transaxle" in the Index.

If you cannot shift out of PARK (P), ease the pressure on the shift lever. Push the shift lever all the way into PARK (P) as you maintain brake application. Then move the shift lever into the gear you want. If you ever hold the pedal down but still can't shift out of PARK (P), try this:

- Turn the ignition key to ACC. Open and close the driver's door to turn off the retained Accessory Power (RAP) feature
- Apply and hold the brake until the end of Step 4.
- Shift to NEUTRAL (N).
- Start the vehicle and then shift to the drive gear you want.
- Have the vehicle fixed as soon as you can.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

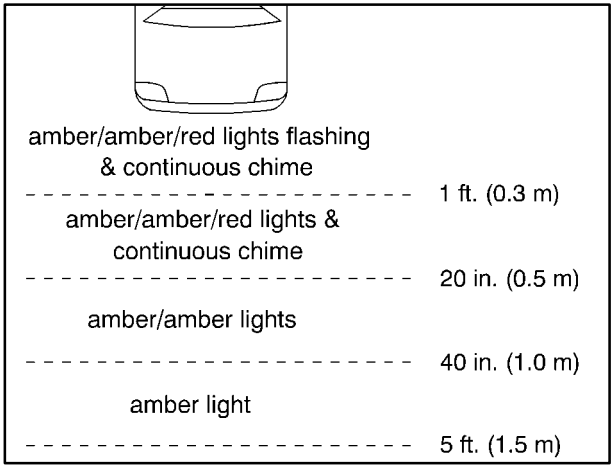
Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA)(Option)

Ultrasonic rear parking assist can help you to determine how close an object is to your rear bumper within a given area, making parking easier.

The URPA display is located inside the vehicle, above the rear window. It has three color-coded lights that can be seen through the rearview mirror.

How the System Works

Ultrasonic rear parking assist comes on automatically when the shift lever is moved into REVERSE (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 3 mph (5 km/h). When the system comes on, the three lights on the display will illuminate to let you know that the system is working. URPA senses how close your vehicle is to an object. The distance is determined by the four rear sensors located on the bumper. When shifting into REVERSE (R) and an object is detected, one of the following will occur:



A chime will sound the first time an object is detected, if the object is between 20 inches (0.5 m) and 5 feet (1.5 m) away.

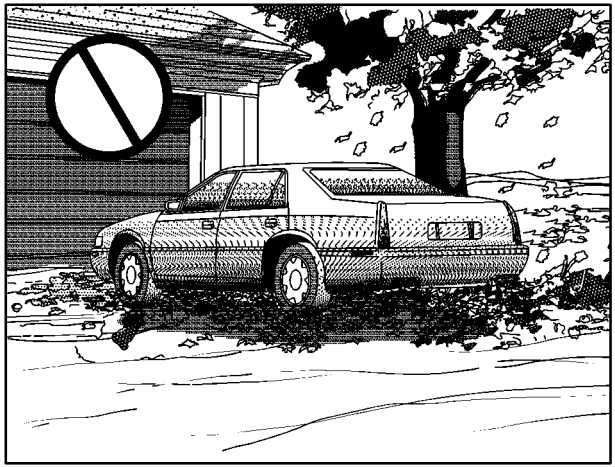
URPA can detect objects 3 inches (7.6 cm) and wider, and at least 10 inches (2.5 cm) tall, but cannot detect objects that are above trunk level. In order for the rear sensors to recognize an object, it must be within operating range.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the URPA system is not functioning properly, the display will flash red, indicating that there is a problem. The light will also flash red when you are driving if a trailer is attached to your vehicle, or if you have a bicycle or an object hanging out of your trunk. The light will continue to flash until the trailer or the object is removed and your vehicle is driven forward at least 15 mph. It may also flash red if the ultrasonic sensors are not kept clean. So be sure to keep your rear bumper free of mud, dirt, snow, ice and slush or the system may not work properly. If after cleaning the rear bumper and then driving at least 15 mph, the display continues to flash red, see your dealer. It may also flash red if your vehicle is moving in REVERSE (R) at a speed greater than 3 mph (5 km/h). Other conditions that may affect system performance include things like, the vibrations from a jackhammer or the compression of airbrakes on a very large truck.

As always, drivers should use care when backing up a vehicle. Always look behind you, being sure to check for other vehicles, obstructions and blind spots. For cleaning instructions, see “Cleaning Your Vehicle” in the Index.

Parking Over Things That Burn



⚠ CAUTION:

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite. Don’t park over papers, leaves, dry grass or other things that can burn.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Exhaust

⚠ CAUTION:

Engine exhaust can kill. It contains the gas carbon monoxide (CO), which you can't see or smell. It can cause unconsciousness and death.

You might have exhaust coming in if:

- **Your exhaust system sounds strange or different.**
- **Your vehicle gets rusty underneath.**
- **Your vehicle was damaged in a collision.**
- **Your vehicle was damaged when driving over high points on the road or over road debris.**
- **Repairs weren't done correctly.**
- **Your vehicle or exhaust system had been modified improperly.**

If you ever suspect exhaust is coming into your vehicle:

- **Drive it only with all the windows down to blow out any CO; and**
- **Have your vehicle fixed immediately.**

Running Your Engine While You're Parked

It's better not to park with the engine running. But if you ever have to, here are some things to know.

⚠ CAUTION:

Idling the engine with the climate control system off could allow dangerous exhaust into your vehicle (see the earlier Caution under "Engine Exhaust").

Also, idling in a closed-in place can let deadly carbon monoxide (CO) into your vehicle even if the fan switch is at the highest setting. One place this can happen is a garage. Exhaust -- with CO -- can come in easily. NEVER park in a garage with the engine running.

Another closed-in place can be a blizzard. (See "Blizzard" in the Index.)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. Don't leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you've left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle won't move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake after you move the shift lever to PARK (P).

Follow the proper steps to be sure your vehicle won't move. See "Shifting Into PARK (P)" in the Index.

If you are parking on a hill and if you're pulling a trailer, also see "Towing a Trailer" in the Index.

Windows

Power Windows

The power window controls are located on the armrest near each window. Press the up or down arrows on the controls to raise or lower the windows.

Your vehicle has Retained Accessory Power (RAP). See "Retained Accessory Power" in the Index.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Express-Down Window

This feature is on all power windows. Press the down arrow to the second position to activate the express-down feature. If you want to stop the window as it is lowering, press the control again.

Rear Window Lockout

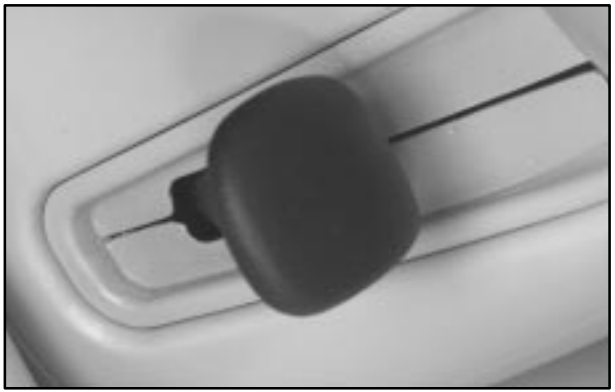
Press the LOCK button down to disable the rear passenger's window controls. A light on the button will display to indicate that the rear window controls are disabled.

When this feature is active, the driver will still have control of all windows. Press the LOCK button again to allow the passengers to use their window controls. After pressing the button, the light will go out to indicate that the rear window controls are again enabled.

Horn

The horn can be sounded by pressing on the center of the steering wheel pad.

Tilt Wheel



The tilt wheel control is located on the outboard side of the steering column.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tilt steering allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. Raising the steering wheel to the highest level gives your legs more room when you enter and exit the vehicle.

Hold the steering wheel and pull the lever toward you to bring the steering wheel close to you. Adjust the steering wheel to a comfortable position and then release the lever to lock it into place.

Power Tilt and Telescopic Wheel (Option)

The power tilt wheel control is located on the outboard side of the steering column.

To operate the power tilt feature, push the control up and the steering wheel will tilt up. Push the control down and the steering wheel will go down.

If the power tilt control is pressed up or down and held in that position, there will be a slight movement and a slight pause followed by a continuous movement in the direction the control is being pressed. This allows very fine control of the steering wheel position. If the control is bumped, the steering wheel moves approximately one degree in the direction commanded.

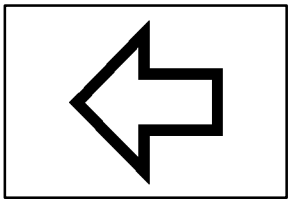
Push the control forward and the steering wheel moves toward the front of the vehicle. Push the control rearward and the steering wheel moves toward the rear of the vehicle. To set the memory position, see “Vehicle Programming and Personalization Features” and “Memory Seat, Mirrors and Steering Wheel”in the Index.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever

Turn and Lane Change Signals

To signal a turn, move the lever on the left side of the steering wheel all the way up or down. The lever returns automatically when the turn is complete.



An arrow located on the instrument panel cluster will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. Hold it there until the lane change is complete. The lever returns when it is released.

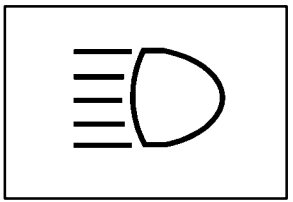
If the turn signal is left on, a warning chime will sound and the Driver Information Center (DIC) will display TURN SIGNAL ON (after driving about a mile) to remind you to turn it off.

Arrows that flash rapidly when signaling for a turn or lane change may be caused by a burned-out signal bulb. Other drivers won't see the turn signal.

Replace burned-out bulbs to help avoid possible accidents. Check the fuse (see "Fuses and Circuit Breakers" in the Index) and check for burned-out bulbs if the arrow fails to work when signaling a turn.

Headlamp High/Low Beam

When the low-beam headlamps are on, push the turn signal lever away from you to change the headlamps to high beam.



This light on the instrument panel cluster will be on, indicating high-beam usage.

Pull the turn signal lever toward you to return to low-beam headlamps.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Flash-To-Pass

This feature lets you use the high-beam headlamps to signal the driver in front of you that you want to pass.

Pull the turn signal lever toward you briefly to flash-to-pass. When you do:

- If the headlamps are either off or in the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) mode, the high-beam headlamps will turn on. They'll stay on as long as you hold the lever there. Release the lever to turn them off.
- If the headlamps are on low beam, they will remain active and the high beam will also illuminate until you release the lever.

Windshield Wipers

You can control the windshield wipers by moving the lever with the wiper symbol on it. This lever is located on the right side of your steering column. For information on wiper-activated headlamp operation, refer to "Wiper-Activated Headlamps" in the Index.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

LO or HI: Move the lever up to LO for steady wiping at a slow speed. Move the lever higher to HI for steady wiping at a high speed.

INT (DELAY): Move the lever up to the INT position, then turn the INT ADJ band, which is located on the lever, to adjust the delay time. The higher you turn the INT ADJ band, the more frequent the wipers will operate.

OFF: Lower the lever to its resting position (OFF) to turn off the wipers.

MIST: Pull the lever down once and release it for a single wipe cycle. For more cycles, hold the lever down in the MIST position longer.

To wash the windshield, press the button located at the tip of the lever.

Be sure to clear ice and snow from the wiper blades before using them. If they're frozen to the windshield, carefully loosen or thaw them. If the blades do become damaged, get new blades or blade inserts.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wiper motor. A circuit breaker will stop the motor until it cools. Clear away snow or ice to prevent an overload.

Rainsense™ Wipers (If Equipped)

The moisture sensor is mounted on the passenger's interior side of the windshield behind the rearview mirror and is used to automatically operate the wipers by monitoring the amount of moisture that is on the windshield.

The Rainsense system can be activated by moving the wiper stalk up to the INT position and turning the INT ADJ band to one of five sensitivity settings. The bottom INT ADJ position is the lowest sensitivity setting. This allows more water to collect on the windshield between wipes. Turning the INT ADJ band to the other INT ADJ settings increases the sensitivity of the system and the frequency of wipes. A single wipe will occur each time you turn the INT ADJ band to a higher sensitivity setting. An initial wipe will occur when you turn the ignition on, while the wiper switch is in the INT position, as a reminder that Rainsense is active. The windshield wipers also remain in a "high park" position, even when the ignition is turned off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

The Rainsense wipers operate in a delay mode as well as a continuous low or high speed depending on the amount of moisture and the sensitivity setting. The MIST and “wash” cycles operate as normal and are not affected by the Rainsense function.

NOTICE:

The wipers must be turned off when going through a car wash to avoid damage.

It is important to note that the Rainsense wiping feature (INT ADJ) can be overridden at any time by manually changing the wiper control to LO or HI speed.

NOTICE:

Do not place stickers or other items on the exterior glass surface directly in front of the moisture sensor. Doing this could cause the moisture sensor to malfunction.

Windshield Washer

The windshield washer has both a “demand” mode and a “programmed” mode, depending on the amount of windshield washer fluid you need.

⚠ CAUTION:

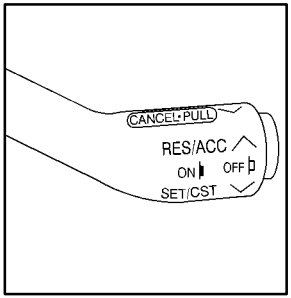
In freezing weather, don’t use your washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

To spray washer fluid on the windshield in the programmed mode, press and release the button on the tip of the lever. The washer will provide a measured amount of fluid to the windshield and the wiper will either stop or return to your original wiping speed. To spray washer fluid on the windshield in the demand mode, press and hold the button until you have enough fluid, and the wipers will either stop or return to your original wiping speed.

CHECK WASHER FLUID will be displayed on the DIC when the washer fluid reaches a low level.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Cruise Control



The cruise control lever is located on the lower right side of the steering column.

With cruise control, you can maintain a speed of about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator. This can help on long trips. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 25 mph (40 km/h). When cruise control is on, you will see the CRUISE light on the instrument panel cluster.

Cruise control shuts off when you apply your brakes.

⚠ CAUTION:

- **Cruise control can be dangerous where you can't drive safely at a steady speed. So, don't use your cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.**
- **Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause needless wheel spinning, and you could lose control. Don't use cruise control on slippery roads.**

If your vehicle is in cruise control when the traction control system begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control will automatically disengage. (See "Traction Control System" in the Index.) When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, you may turn the cruise control back on.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting Cruise Control

⚠ CAUTION:

If you leave your cruise control switch on when you're not using cruise, you might hit a button and go into cruise when you don't want to. You could be startled and even lose control. Keep the cruise control switch off until you want to use cruise control.

1. Press the button at the end of the lever to turn on the system.
2. Accelerate to the speed you want.
3. Move the lever down once to SET/CST. The CRUISE light will come on.
4. Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Resuming a Set Speed

Setting the cruise control at a desired speed and then applying the brake will end the cruise function.

Once you're going about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more, you can move the cruise control lever up to RES/ACC (Resume/Accelerate) briefly to reset. This returns you to your desired preset speed. The CRUISE light will come on.

If you hold the lever at RES/ACC, the vehicle will accelerate until you release the lever or apply the brake. So unless you want to go faster, don't hold the lever at RES/ACC.

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

There are two ways to go to a higher speed:

- Use the accelerator pedal to go to a higher speed. Move the cruise lever to SET/CST and then release the lever and the accelerator pedal. You'll now cruise at the higher speed.
- Move the lever up to RES/ACC. Hold it there until you reach a desired speed and then release the lever. To increase your speed in very small amounts, move the lever up to RES/ACC one second at a time. Each time you do this, your vehicle will go about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) faster.

The accelerate feature will only work after you have set the cruise control speed by moving the cruise lever down to SET/CST.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

There are two ways to reduce your speed while using cruise control:

- Move the cruise lever down to SET/CST and hold it there until you reach a desired lower speed, then release it.
- To slow down in very small amounts, move the cruise lever to SET/CST briefly. Each time you do this, you'll go 1 mph (1.6 km/h) slower.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase your speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, your vehicle will slow down to the cruise control speed you set earlier.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well your cruise control will work on hills depends upon your speed, load and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you may have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain your speed. When going downhill, you may have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep your speed down. Of course, applying the brakes or downshifting into FIRST (1) takes you out of cruise control. Many drivers find this to be too much trouble and don't use cruise control on steep hills.

Ending Cruise Control

There are three ways to end cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal.
- Press the button at the end of the cruise lever.
- Pull the cruise lever (CANCEL) toward you.

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed memory is erased when you turn off the cruise control or the ignition.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Exterior Lamps

The control located on the left side of the instrument panel operates these lamp systems:

- Parking Lamps
- Headlamps
- Taillamps
- Sidemarker Lamps
- License Plate Lamp
- Underhood Lamp
- Fog Lamps (STS Only)
- Instrument Panel Lights

Instrument panel backlighting will dim only when it is dark outside.

Parking Lamps

Turn the exterior lamps control knob once clockwise to turn on the parking lamps, taillamps, sidemarker lamps, license plate lamp and underhood lamp. Turn the control counterclockwise to turn these lamps off. The parking brake indicator light will be on if the parking lamps are on (with the engine off and the ignition in ACC or ON).

Headlamps

The control for the headlamps is located on the left side of the instrument panel. Turn the exterior lamps control knob all the way clockwise to turn the headlamps on. Turn the control knob all the way counterclockwise to turn the headlamps off.

Wiper-Activated Headlamps

This feature turns on the headlamps and parking lamps after the windshield wipers have been in use for approximately six seconds.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To operate the wiper-activated headlamps, the Twilight Sentinel® must be on. If the wiper-activated headlamps are on and the ignition key is turned to ACC, the wiper-activated headlamps will continue. When you turn the key to OFF or ACC, the wiper-activated headlamps will immediately turn off.

The wiper-activated headlamps will turn off if you turn off the Twilight Sentinel or the windshield wipers. If turned off by deactivating the Twilight Sentinel, a HEADLAMPS SUGGESTED message will be displayed on the Driver's Information Center (DIC).

Lamps On Reminder

You will hear a warning chime if you open the driver's door while leaving the lamps on and the exterior lamps control is activated. An exception to this is when you're using Twilight Sentinel or if the ignition is on.

Daytime Running Lamps

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, but they can be especially helpful in the short periods after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will make the high-beam headlamps come on at reduced brightness when:

- The ignition is on,
- the headlamp switch is off and
- the transaxle is not in PARK (P).

When DRL are on, only your high-beam headlamps (at reduced brightness) will be on. No other exterior lamps such as the parking lamps, taillamps, etc. will be on when the DRL are being used. Your instrument panel won't be lit up either.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

When the Twilight Sentinel® switch is on and it's dark enough outside, the high-beam headlamps (at reduced intensity) will turn off and normal low-beam headlamp operation will occur. When the Twilight Sentinel switch is on and it's bright enough outside, the regular lamps will go off, and the high-beam headlamps at reduced brightness will take over.

If it's dark outside and the Twilight Sentinel control is off, a HEADLAMPS SUGGESTED message will display on the Driver's Information Center (DIC). This message informs the driver that turning on the exterior lamps is recommended even though the DRL are still illuminated. This message indicates that it has become dark enough outside to require the headlamps and/or other exterior lamps. Turning on the Twilight Sentinel or the headlamps will deactivate the DRL and remove the HEADLAMPS SUGGESTED message. If the parking lamps or the fog lamps were turned on instead, the DRL will still deactivate and the HEADLAMPS SUGGESTED message will continue to be displayed.

To idle your vehicle with the DRL off, turn off the Twilight Sentinel and shift the transaxle into PARK (P). Placing your vehicle in PARK (P) disables the DRL. The DRL will stay off until you shift out of PARK (P).

To drive your vehicle with the DRL off, turn off the Twilight Sentinel and manually turn on the parking lamps or fog lamps (if equipped).

As with any vehicle, you should turn on the regular headlamp system when you need it.

Fog Lamps (STS Only)

Use the fog lamps for better vision in foggy or misty conditions. When you push the fog lamp button located next to the exterior lamps control, a small indicator light in the fog lamp button and the LIGHTS ON and fog lamp indicator lights on the instrument panel cluster will tell you that the fog lamps and the parking lamps are on. Pushing the fog lamp button again will turn them off.

If you turn on the high-beam headlamps, the fog lamps will turn off. They'll turn back on again when you change to low-beam headlamps. You can use the fog lamp button to turn the fog lamps on or off when the parking lamps or headlamps are on.

When the Twilight Sentinel® is on and the fog lamps are turned on, the fog lamps, headlamps and parking lamps will remain on.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cornering Lamps

The cornering lamps come on when the headlamps or parking lamps are on and you signal a turn. They provide more light for cornering.

Twilight Sentinel®

This control is located below the exterior lamps control knob. It automatically turns the lamps on and off by sensing how dark it is outside.

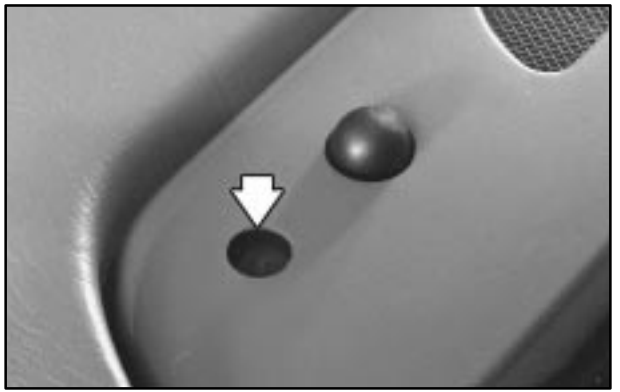
To operate the Twilight Sentinel, leave the exterior lamps control knob off and move the TWILIGHT lever to any position but OFF.

If you move the lever all the way to the right, the lamps will remain on for approximately three minutes after the ignition has been turned to OFF or ACC. If you move the lever so it is just on, the lamps will go off quickly when you turn the ignition out of ON. You can adjust the delay time from only a few seconds to three minutes.

If it's dark enough outside and Twilight Sentinel is turned off, a HEADLAMPS SUGGESTED message will display on the Driver's Information Center (DIC). This message informs the driver that turning on the exterior lamps is recommended (it has become dark enough outside to require the headlamps and/or other exterior lamps). Turning on the Twilight Sentinel, the headlamps or the fog lamps will remove the HEADLAMPS SUGGESTED message.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Light Sensor



The light sensor for the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) and the Twilight Sentinel is located on the driver's side of the front defogger grille. If you cover the sensor, it will read "dark" and the lamps will come on.

Exterior Lighting Battery Saver

If the manual parking lamps or headlamps have been left on, the exterior lamps will turn off approximately ten minutes after the ignition is turned to OFF. This protects against draining the battery in case you have accidentally left the headlamps or parking lamps on. The battery saver does not work if the headlamps are turned on after the ignition switch is turned to OFF. If you need to leave the lamps on for more than 10 minutes, use the exterior lamps control knob to turn the lamps back on. To delay the lamps from turning off, see "Twilight Sentinel" in the Index.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Interior Lamps

Instrument Panel Intensity/Brightness Control

With the parking lamps on, the instrument panel lighting automatically dims when it becomes dark outside and brightens when it becomes light outside. When it's dark, and if the parking lamps are on, the brightness control can be manually adjusted by using the instrument panel brightness control.

The button is located to the right of the Twilight Sentinel control. Push the button in to release it to the outward position.

Turn the button counterclockwise to dim and clockwise to brighten the lighting. Push the button in to return it to the original storage position.

Interior Lamps Control

The interior lamps control, located in the overhead console, has three positions: OFF, AUTO and ON.

With the control at AUTO and the front door opened, the overhead console light, front hush panel lamps and rear footwell lamps in the door will automatically come on. When the rear door is opened, all the front door lighting and rear overhead lamps will come on.

When the control is in ON, the courtesy lamps are turned on. When the control is in OFF, the lamps are turned off. (All automatic interior lighting functions are terminated.) When the interior lamp control is in OFF, only the driver's door controls and ignition switch backlighting functions will operate.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Illuminated Entry

The illuminated entry system turns on the courtesy lamps and the backlighting to the driver's door switches and to the ignition key when a door is opened or if you press the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter unlock button. The illuminated entry system works with the light sensor and it must be dark outside in order for the courtesy lamps or backlighting to turn on. The courtesy lamps turn off approximately 25 seconds after the last door is closed or after the ignition key is turned to RUN or if the RKE transmitter lock button is pressed. The courtesy lamps turn off approximately 40 seconds after the doors are unlocked with the RKE transmitter if no door is opened.

Parade Dimming

This feature prohibits the dimming of the instrument panel lights during daylight while the parking lamps are on. This feature works with the light sensor and is fully automatic. When the light sensor reads darkness outside, the instrument panel lights can be adjusted by following the steps under "Instrument Panel Intensity/Brightness Control." Backlighting to the instrument panel will also turn on.

Reading Lamps

The reading lamps are located in the roof. These lamps and the interior courtesy lamps come on when any door is opened and it is dark outside. The rear lamps come on when a rear door is opened. Press the button near the lamps to turn them on and off.

If the reading lamps are left on, they automatically shut off 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off.

Battery Load Management

The battery load management feature is designed to monitor the vehicle's electrical load and determine when the battery is in a heavy discharge condition. During times of high electrical loading, the engine may idle at a higher revolutions per minute (rpm) setting than normal to make sure the battery charges. High electrical loads may occur when several of the following are on: headlamps, high beams, fog lamps, rear window defogger, high blower fan, heated seats and engine cooling fans.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the battery continues to discharge, even with the engine idling at a higher rpm setting, some electrical loads will automatically be reduced. When this occurs, the rear window defogger may take slightly longer to clear the glass, the heated seats may not get as warm as they usually do and the fan blower may cut back to a lower speed. For more battery saving information, see “Battery Saver Active Message” in the Index.

Inadvertent Power Battery Saver

This feature is designed to protect your vehicle’s battery against drainage from the interior lamps, trunk lamp, glove box lamp, cigarette lighters or the garage door opener. When the ignition is turned off, the power to these features will automatically turn off after 10 minutes. Power will be restored for an additional 10 minutes if any door is opened, the trunk is opened or the courtesy lamp switch is turned on.

Mirrors

Electrochromic Day/Night Rearview Mirror with Compass

Your vehicle has an electrochromic inside rearview mirror with a compass.

By pressing the MIRROR side of the button located at the bottom of the mirror, the mirror automatically changes to reduce glare from headlamps behind you.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

The mirror also includes an eight-point compass display in the upper right corner of the mirror face. When on, the compass automatically calibrates as the vehicle is driven.

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

Cleaning the Photocells

Use a cotton swab and glass cleaner to clean the photocells when necessary.

Mirror Operation

The right side of the button, located at the bottom of the mirror, turns the electrochromic mirror on and off. To turn on the automatic dimming feature, press MIRROR. To turn off the automatic dimming, press MIRROR again. The indicator light will be illuminated when this feature is active.

Time Delay

The automatic mirror has a time delay feature which prevents unnecessary changing from the night back to the day position. This delay prevents rapid changing of the mirror as you drive under lights and through traffic.

Compass Operation

Press the COMPASS side of the button to turn the compass on or off.

While the ignition is on and the compass feature is selected, the compass will show two character boxes for approximately two seconds. After two seconds, the mirror will display the compass heading.

Compass Calibration

If, after two seconds, the display does not show a compass heading (“N” for North, for example), there may be a strong magnetic field interfering with the compass. Such interference may be caused by a magnetic antenna mount, magnetic note pad holder or a similar magnetic item. If the letter “C” should ever appear in the compass window, the mirror needs calibration.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The mirror can be calibrated in one of two ways:

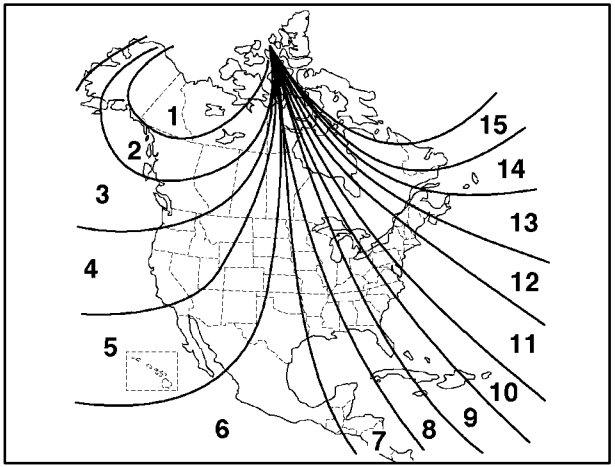
- Drive the vehicle in circles at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less until the display reads a direction, or
- Drive the vehicle on your everyday routine.

Compass Variance

The mirror is set in zone eight upon leaving the factory. It will be necessary to adjust the compass to compensate for compass variance if you live outside zone eight. Under certain circumstances, as during a long distance cross-country trip, it will be necessary to adjust for compass variance. Compass variance is the difference between earth's magnetic north and true geographic north. If not adjusted to account for compass variance, your compass could give false readings.

To adjust for compass variance:

1. Use the COMPASS side of the button located at the bottom of the mirror. Press and hold COMPASS until a zone number appears in the display.
2. Find your current location and variance zone number on the following zone map.



3. Press COMPASS on the bottom of the mirror until the new zone number appears in the display. After you stop pressing the button, the display will show a "C" and will need recalibration.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Remote Control Mirror (Heated)

This feature is located on the driver's door armrest. Move the L/R select switch located under the power mirror control to choose the left or right mirror.

To adjust the mirror, move the arrow control in the direction you want the mirror to go. Leave the L/R select switch in the center position to disable mirror movement. This is helpful in preventing unwanted mirror movement in case the control is accidentally bumped while driving. Adjust each outside mirror so the vehicle is barely visible in the mirror to maximize your side view.

The mirrors can also be programmed for personalization and parallel parking feature if you have the optional memory package. For more information, see "Memory Seat, Mirrors and Steering Wheel" and "Vehicle Programming and Personalization Features" in the Index. For information on the heated outside mirrors, see "Rear Window Defogger" in the Index.

Driver's Outside Auto-Dimming Rearview Mirror

Only the driver's side outside mirror will adjust for the glare of headlamps behind you. This feature is controlled by pressing the MIRROR side of the button on and off. This button is located at the bottom of the electrochromic mirror. See "Electrochromic Day/Night Rearview Mirror with Compass" in the Index for more information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Convex Outside Mirror

Your passenger's side mirror is convex. A convex mirror's surface is curved so you can see more from the driver's seat. This mirror does not have a dimming feature.

⚠ CAUTION:

A convex mirror can make things (like other vehicles) look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on your right. Check your inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

Curb View Assist Mirror (If Equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with memory mirrors, it will also be equipped with the curb view assist mirror feature. This feature will cause the passenger's mirror to tilt when the vehicle is in REVERSE (R). This feature is especially useful in allowing you to view the curb when you are parallel parking. If further adjustment is needed after the mirror is tilted, the power mirror controls may be used to adjust the mirror. If the mirror control is pressed while the passenger's mirror is tilted, the mirror will move in that direction, but will return to its original position once the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (R) and a five-second delay has occurred.

To program the feature, see "Mirror to Curb in Reverse" in the Index.

Storage Compartments

Glove Box

The glove box is located in front of the passenger's seat. To lock the glove box door, insert the master key into the lock cylinder and turn it clockwise. Turn the key counterclockwise to unlock the door.

Map Pocket

The map/storage pockets are located on each front door as well as on the passenger's and driver's front seatbacks.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Center Console Storage

The center console comes with a storage tray, a storage compartment for CDs or tapes, a dual cupholder that unfolds, a coinholder, an optional phone and an armrest. The cupholder can be opened by pressing on the surface panel located in front of the armrest and unfolding it. Close the lid to secure.

Rear Storage Armrest

Your vehicle is equipped with a rear seat armrest which includes an open storage compartment and a dual cupholder that unfolds for use. Pull the armrest down by using the attached handle. Push in the lever located at the end of the armrest to open the storage compartment and access the cupholder.

Wastebasket

The wastebasket is located on the passenger's side near the footwell. To remove, pull the bottom portion outward to release the velcro and slide the basket toward you. Reverse the steps to reinstall.

Convenience Net

The convenience net is inside the back wall of the trunk. Put small loads, like grocery bags, behind the net. It can help keep them from falling over during sharp turns or quick starts and stops.

The net is not for larger, heavier loads. Store them in the trunk as far forward as you can. When not using the net, hook the net to the tabs securing it to the sill plate.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Ashtrays and Cigarette Lighter (Option)

The ashtrays and cigarette lighters may be ordered through your dealer.

NOTICE:

Don't put papers or other flammable items into your ashtrays. Hot cigarettes or other smoking materials could ignite them, causing a damaging fire.

Front Ashtray

Press on the lower edge of the cover of the console located below the climate control system to reveal the front ashtray. To clean the ashtray, lift it out by pulling on the snuffer.

Rear Ashtray

The rear seat ashtrays are located on the rear door armrests. To use, lift the lid. For more information, see your dealer.

Cigarette Lighter

The front cigarette lighter is located near the ashtray. Press it all the way in and release. It will pop back out by itself when it's ready to light. You may also have a lighter on the back of the center console near the rear seat air outlet.

Power to the cigarette lighter will shut off 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off. This helps to prevent battery drainage. For more information, see "Inadvertent Power Battery Saver" in the Index.

NOTICE:

Don't hold a cigarette lighter in with your hand while it is heating. If you do, it won't be able to back away from the heating element when it's ready. That can make it overheat, damaging the lighter and the heating element.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Sun Visors

Swing down the visor to block out glare. It can be detached from the center mount and moved to the side. When moved to the side, the sun visor will also move forward and rearward. The sun visors are equipped with a storage flap that can be used for small items such as toll tickets.

There is also a secondary visor attached separately to the headliner.

Lighted Visor Vanity Mirror

Turn the sunshade down and lift the cover to see the mirror. Move the slide switch up or down to brighten or dim the lamp.

Accessory Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets are located at the rear of the center console and on the lower inboard carpeted panel on the passenger's side of the vehicle. When the ignition is on, you can plug in accessories that require electrical power.

Don't leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly.

If you use the accessory power outlets for more than 10 minutes after turning off your engine, you will risk running your battery down. For more information about accessory power outlets, contact your dealer.

Cellular Telephone (Option)

Your vehicle has been prewired for dealer installation of a Cadillac Communiport® integrated portable cellular telephone system. If your vehicle is already equipped from the factory with this option, your vehicle is prepared to receive a completion kit to finalize the installation at the dealer. The system has steering wheel telephone controls and information output through the Driver's Information Center (DIC). Voice activation, memo record and hands-free operation are standard features. For more information, contact your dealer. A user's guide is provided with the telephone.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

OnStar® System (If Equipped)

OnStar is a vehicle communications service. The following services are available through subscription with OnStar and are available 24 hours a day:

Emergency Services

- Automatic Notification of Air Bag Deployment
- Theft Notification and Stolen Vehicle Tracking
- Roadside Assistance with Location
- Remote Diagnostics
- OnStar MED-NET
- Accident Assist

Convenience Services

- Remote Door Unlock
- Route Support
- Concierge Services
- Ride Assist

A complete user's guide is provided with the OnStar System. For more information contact OnStar at 1-888-ONSTAR7.

Assist Handles

An assist handle above each door can be used when getting out of your vehicle.

Garment Hooks

For your convenience, a garment hook is attached to each rear assist handle.

Umbrella Holder (If Equipped)

The driver's front seat cushion may come equipped w ith an umbrella holder. Gently slide the umbrella into the slot located under the front portion of the driver's seat cushion.

Floor Mats

Your vehicle is equipped with rubber-backed front and rear floor mats. Keep them clean by vacuuming and using a spot cleaner, if necessary. Do not machine wash.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Sunroof (Option)

There are two control switches to operate the sunroof -- one to open/close or express-open the sunroof and the other for vent open/close. The control switches work only when the ignition is on or when the ignition is off and the Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active.

Press and hold the ROOF switch rearward to the first position to open the glass panel and sunshade. The sunshade can also be opened or closed by hand. To close the glass panel, press and hold the ROOF switch forward.

Press and release the ROOF switch rearward to the second position to express-open the glass panel to the comfort stop position. The comfort stop is designed to help reduce noise and make the rear passengers more comfortable. The glass panel may then be fully opened by pressing the roof switch again. If you want to stop the glass panel in a partially-open position, press either the ROOF or VENT switch in any direction.

If you press and hold the ROOF switch in the express-open position for more than one second, the express open will be overridden and the sunroof will stop when the switch is released.

To vent the sunroof, press and hold the upper part of the VENT switch. The sunshade must be opened by hand. To close, press and hold the lower part of the VENT switch.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

HomeLink® Transmitter

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes and modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Programming the HomeLink Transmitter

Do not use the HomeLink Transmitter with any garage door opener that does not have the “stop and reverse” safety feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.

Be sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door you are programming.

Your vehicle’s engine should be turned off while programming the transmitter. Follow these steps to program up to three channels:

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

1. If you have previously programmed a transmitter channel, proceed to Step 2. Otherwise, hold down the two outside buttons on the HomeLink Transmitter until the indicator light begins to flash rapidly (after 20 seconds). Then release the buttons. This procedure initializes the memory and erases any previous settings for all three channels.
2. Decide which one of the three channels you want to program. Hold the end of the hand-held transmitter about 2 to 5 inches (5 to 13 cm) away from the surface of the HomeLink Transmitter so that you can still see the indicator light.
3. Using both hands, press the hand-held transmitter button and the desired button on the HomeLink Transmitter. Continue to press both buttons through Step 4.
4. Hold down both buttons until you see the indicator light on the HomeLink Transmitter flash slowly and then rapidly. The rapid flashing indicates that the HomeLink Transmitter has been programmed. Release both buttons once the indicator light starts to flash rapidly.

If you have trouble programming the HomeLink Transmitter, make sure that you have followed the directions exactly as described. The HomeLink Transmitter may not work with older garage door openers that do not meet current Federal Consumer Safety Standards. If you cannot program the transmitter after repeated attempts, refer to “Rolling Code Programming” later in this section or contact the HomeLink Transmitter manufacturer at 1-800-355-3515.

Be sure to keep the original hand-held transmitter in case you need to erase and reprogram the HomeLink Transmitter.

Note to Canadian Owners: During programming, the hand-held transmitter may automatically stop transmitting after one or two seconds. In this case, you should press and re-press the button on the hand-held transmitter every two seconds without ever releasing the button on the HomeLink Transmitter. Release both buttons when the indicator light on the HomeLink Transmitter begins to flash rapidly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Operating the HomeLink Transmitter

Press and release the appropriate button on the HomeLink Transmitter. The indicator light comes on while the signal is being transmitted.

The HomeLink Transmitter is disabled when the valet lock switch inside the glove box is activated. For more information, see “Valet Lock” in the Index.

If the hand-held transmitter appears to program the HomeLink Transmitter but does not open your garage door, and if the garage door opener was manufactured after 1996, the garage door opener may have a “rolling code” system. A rolling code system changes the code of the garage door opener every time you open or close the garage door.

To determine if you have this system, press the button on the HomeLink Transmitter that you have programmed already. If the indicator light on the HomeLink Transmitter flashes rapidly for two seconds and then turns solid, the garage door opener has a rolling code system. In a rolling code system, the garage door motor head unit must be trained to the HomeLink Transmitter.

“Rolling Code” Programming (If Equipped)

If you have not previously programmed the hand-held transmitter to the HomeLink Transmitter, see “Programming the HomeLink Transmitter” listed previously. If you have completed this programming already, you now need to train the garage door opener motor head unit to recognize the HomeLink Transmitter. Refer to your garage door opener owner’s manual for the proper transmitter training procedure for your garage door opener brand.

1. Find the training button on the garage door opener motor head unit. The exact location and color of the button may vary by garage door opener brand. If you have difficulty finding the training button, refer to your garage door opener owner’s manual.
2. Press the training button on the garage door opener motor head unit.

   Following this step, you have 30 seconds to start Step 3.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Return to the HomeLink Transmitter in your vehicle and firmly press and release the HomeLink Transmitter button you have already programmed for two to three seconds. Press and release the button again (you may need to do this step up to three times) to make sure that the HomeLink Transmitter has been trained to the garage door opener motor head unit. Check that the training was successful.

The garage door opener should now recognize the HomeLink Transmitter. You may either use the HomeLink Transmitter or the hand-held transmitter to open the garage door.

If after following these instructions, you still have problems training the garage door opener, contact the HomeLink Transmitter manufacturer at 1-800-355-3515.

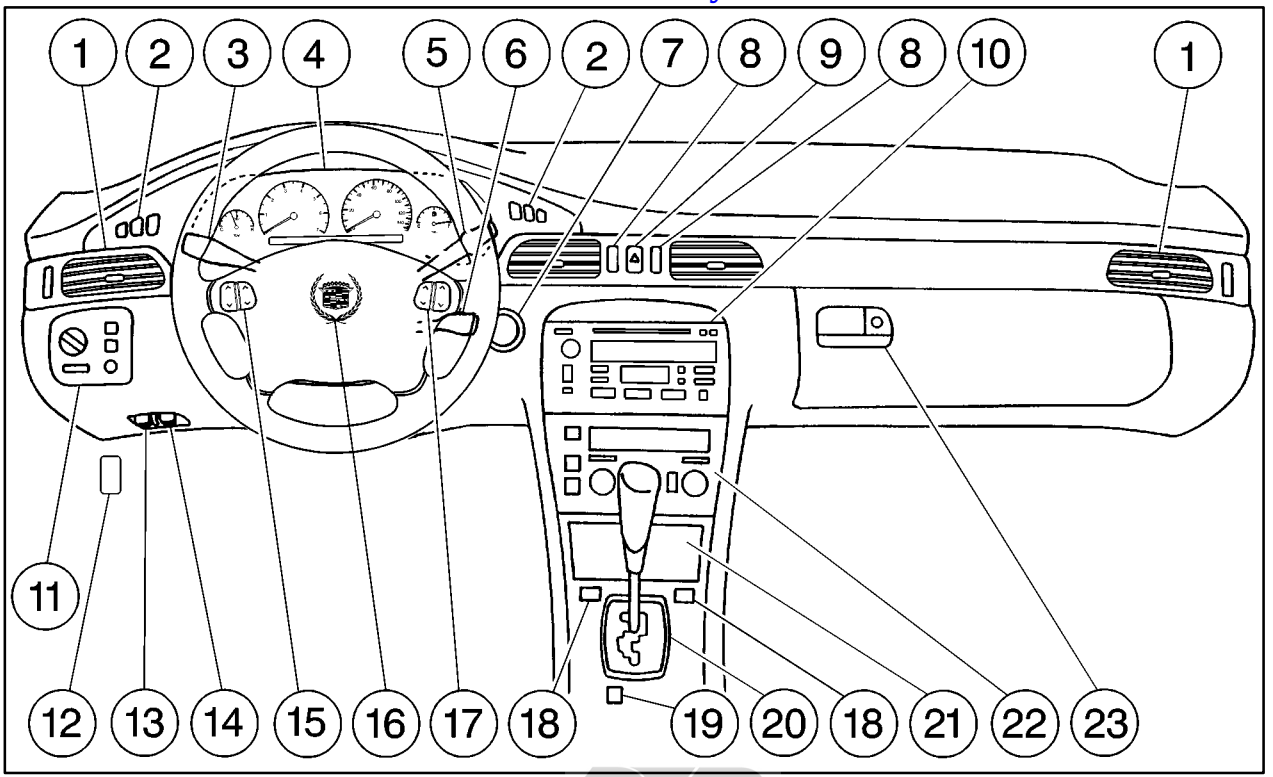
Erasing Channels

To erase all three programmed channels, hold down the two outside buttons until the indicator light begins to flash (after 20 seconds). Release both buttons.

Accessories

Accessories for the HomeLink Transmitter are available from the manufacturer of the unit. If you would like additional information, please call 1-800-355-3515.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS


1
2
3
4
5
6
2
7
8
9
8
10
1
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
18
21
22
23

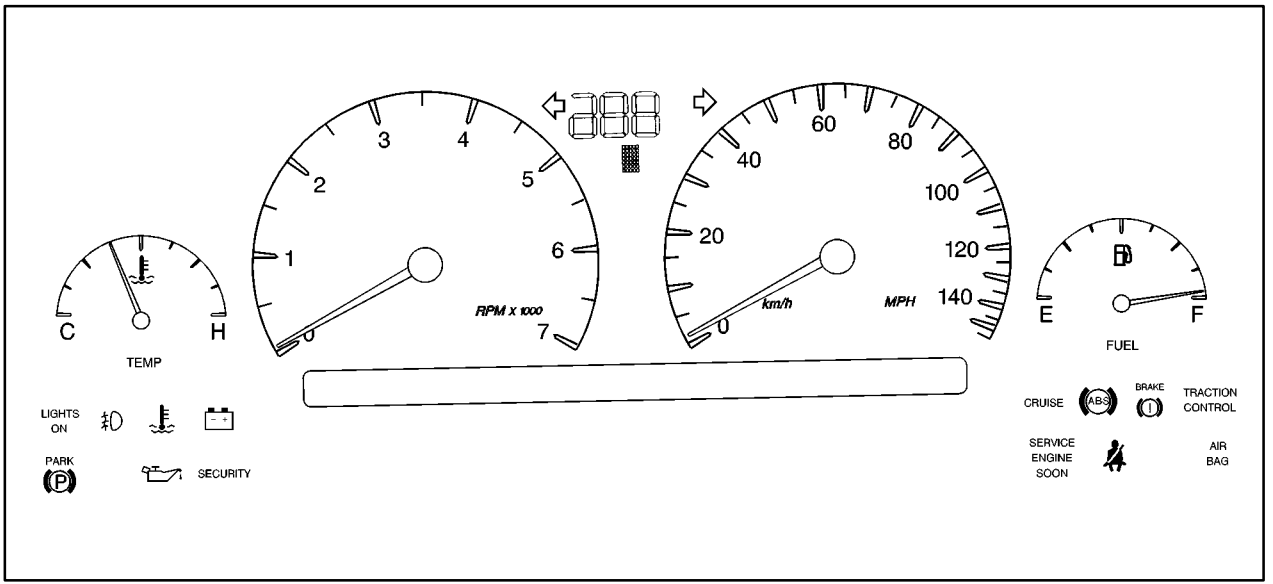
The main components of the instrument panel are:

1. Air Outlets
2. Driver Information Center Control Buttons
3. Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever
4. Instrument Panel Cluster
5. Windshield Wiper/Washer Lever
6. Cruise Control Lever
7. Ignition Switch
8. Air Vent Control Dial
9. Hazard Warning Button
10. Radio
11. Lamp Controls
12. Hood Release
13. Fuel Door Release
14. Trunk Release
15. HVAC Steering Wheel Controls
16. Horn
17. Audio Steering Wheel Controls
18. Heated Seat Controls
19. Traction Control Switch
20. Console Shift Lever
21. Convenience Storage/Optional Ashtray
22. Electronic Climate Controls
23. Glove Box

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument Panel Cluster

Your instrument panel cluster is designed to let you know at a glance how your vehicle is running. You'll know how fast you're going, how much fuel you're using and many other things you'll need to drive safely and economically.



United States version shown, Canada similar

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Speedometer and Odometer

The speedometer lets you see your speed in both miles per hour (mph) and kilometers per hour (km/h). The odometer shows how far your vehicle has been driven, in either miles (used in the United States) or kilometers (used in Canada).

You may wonder what happens if a vehicle has to have a new odometer installed. The new one may read the correct mileage. This is because your vehicle's computer has stored the mileage in memory.

Trip Odometer

There are two trip odometers, which are indicated by Trip A and Trip B. In order to change from one to the other, press the A/B portion of the TRIP button.

By pressing the bottom of this button, you can tell how many miles you have traveled on either your Trip A or Trip B odometer since you last set the odometer back to zero.

Press the RESET part of the button until zeros appear to reset the odometers.

If your vehicle is first sold in the United States, the trip odometer will return to zero after 999.9 miles (1 609 km). If your vehicle is first sold in Canada, the trip odometer will return to zero after 1 999.9 km (1,242 miles). The RESET TRIP A/B button only resets the trip odometer (A or B) that is being displayed. Each trip odometer has to be reset individually.

Display Mode

This button is located between the RESET TRIP A/B button and the ENG/MET button.

Press DSPL MODE to turn the backlighting and the digital speed image on and off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

English/Metric Display

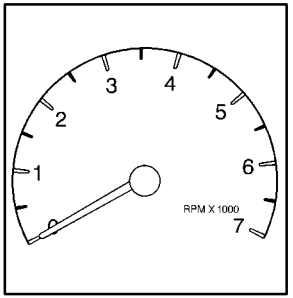
You can go back and forth from English (miles) to metric (kilometers) by pressing this button.

Other readings such as temperature, fuel and trip odometer also go back and forth between English and metric.

Vehicle Speed Limiter

This feature prevents your vehicle from exceeding speeds that the tires are not rated for. When this happens, the engine's fuel supply is shut off. When the vehicle speed slows, the fuel supply will come on again.

Tachometer



This gage indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

NOTICE:

Do not operate the engine with the tachometer in the red area or engine damage may occur.

Engine Speed Limiter

This feature prevents the engine from operating at too many revolutions per minute (rpm). When the engine's rpm are critically high, the fuel supply to the engine is shut off. When the engine speed slows, the fuel supply will come on again. This helps prevent damage to the engine.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators

This part describes the warning lights and gages that may be on your vehicle. The pictures will help you locate them.

Warning lights and gages can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to your warning lights and gages could also save you or others from injury.

Warning lights come on when there may be or is a problem with one of your vehicle's functions. As you will see in the details on the next few pages, some warning lights come on briefly when you start the engine just to let you know they're working. If you are familiar with this section, you should not be alarmed when this happens.

Gages can indicate when there may be or is a problem with one of your vehicle's functions. Often gages and warning lights work together to let you know when there's a problem with your vehicle.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on when you are driving, or when one of the gages shows there may be a problem, check the section that tells you what to do about it. Please follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly -- and even dangerous. So please get to know your warning lights and gages. They're a big help.

Safety Belt Reminder Light

When the key is turned to ON or START, a chime will come on for about eight seconds to remind people to fasten their safety belts.

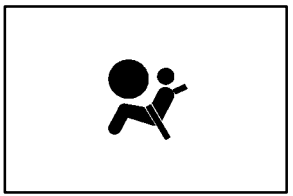
The safety belt light will also come on and stay on for about 70 seconds. If the driver's belt is already buckled, the light will come on briefly, but the chime will not sound.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Air Bag Readiness Light

There is an air bag readiness light on the instrument panel, which shows AIR BAG (United States) or the air bag symbol (Canada). The system checks the air bag's electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. The system check includes the air bag sensors, the air bag modules, the wiring and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the air bag system, see "Air Bag" in the Index.

United States



Canada

This light will come on when you start your vehicle, and it will flash for a few seconds. Then the light should go out. This means the system is ready.

If the air bag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or comes on when you are driving, your air bag system may not work properly. Have your vehicle serviced right away.

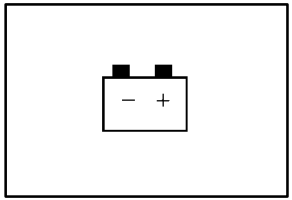
⚠ CAUTION:

If the air bag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle, it means the air bag system may not be working properly. The air bags in your vehicle may not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have your vehicle serviced right away if the air bag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle.

The air bag readiness light should flash for a few seconds when you turn the ignition key to ON. If the light doesn't come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Charging System Light



This light goes on when you turn your key to ON or START. It goes off once you start your engine.

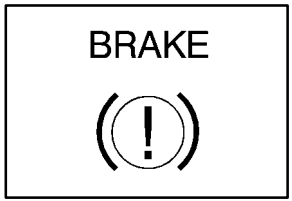
That's a check to be sure the light works. If it doesn't come on, be sure to have it fixed so it will be there to warn you if something goes wrong.

If this light stays on, you need service and you should take your vehicle to the dealer at once. To save your battery until you get there, turn off all accessories.

Brake System Warning and Park Brake Indicator Light

Your vehicle's hydraulic brake system is divided into two parts. If one part isn't working, the other part can still work and stop you. For good braking, though, you need both parts working well.

If the warning light comes on, there is a brake problem. Have your brake system inspected right away.



This light should come on briefly when you turn the ignition key to ON. If it doesn't come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there's a problem.

If the light comes on while you are driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. You may notice that the pedal is harder to push. Or, the pedal may go closer to the floor. It may take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. (See "Towing Your Vehicle" in the Index.)

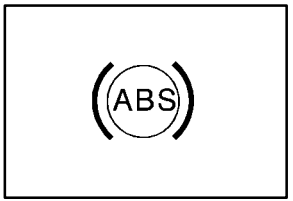
⚠ CAUTION:

Your brake system may not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to an accident. If the light is still on after you've pulled off the road and stopped carefully, have the vehicle towed for service.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When the ignition is on, the brake system warning light will also come on when you set your parking brake. The light will stay on if your parking brake doesn't release fully. If it stays on after your parking brake is fully released, it means you have a brake problem.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light

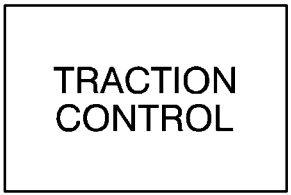


With the anti-lock brake system, the light(s) will come on when you start your engine and may stay on for several seconds. That's normal.

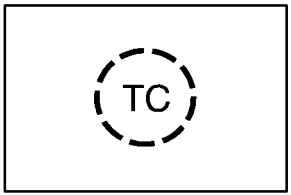
If the light stays on, turn the ignition to OFF. Or, if the light comes on when you're driving, stop as soon as possible and turn the ignition off. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the light still stays on, or comes on again while you're driving, your vehicle needs service. If the regular brake system warning light isn't on, you still have brakes, but you don't have anti-lock brakes. If the regular brake system warning light is also on, you don't have anti-lock brakes and there's a problem with your regular brakes. See "Brake System Warning Light" earlier in this section.

The anti-lock brake system warning light should come on briefly when you turn the ignition key to ON. If the light doesn't come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

Traction Control System Warning Light



United States



Canada

This warning light should come on briefly as you start the engine.

If the warning light doesn't come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there's a problem. If it stays on, or comes on when you're driving, there may be a problem with your traction control system and your vehicle may need service. When this warning light is on, the system will not limit wheel spin. Adjust your driving accordingly.

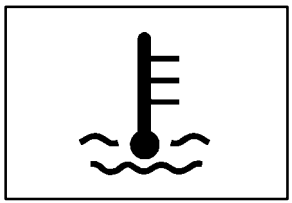
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The traction control system warning light may come on for the following reasons:

- If there's a brake system problem that is specifically related to traction control, the traction control system will turn off and the warning light will come on.
- If the traction control system is affected by an engine-related problem, the system will turn off and the warning light will come on.

If the traction control system warning light comes on and stays on for an extended period of time when the system is turned on, your vehicle needs service.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light

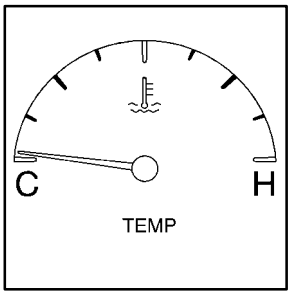


This light tells you that the engine has overheated. You should stop the car and turn the engine off as soon as possible.

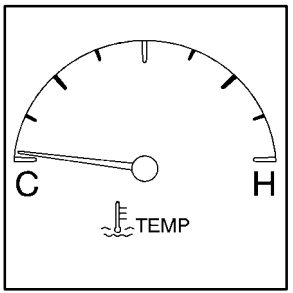
A warning chime should also sound if this light comes on.

As a check, the light should come on for a few seconds when you start your engine. See "Engine Overheating" in the Index.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gage



United States



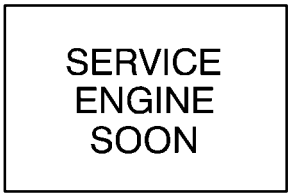
Canada

This gage shows the engine coolant temperature. If the gage pointer moves into the red area, the engine is too hot.

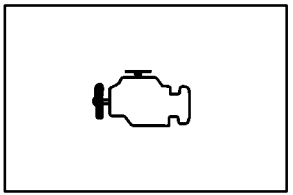
That reading means the same thing as the warning light -- the engine coolant has overheated. See "Engine Overheating" in the Index.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Service Engine Soon Light in the United States or Check Engine Light in Canada)



United States



Canada

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer which monitors operation of the fuel, ignition and emission control systems.

This system is called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) and is intended to assure that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle, helping to produce a cleaner environment. The SERVICE ENGINE SOON or CHECK ENGINE light comes on to indicate that there is a problem and service is required. Malfunctions often will be indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. This may prevent more serious damage to your vehicle. This system is also designed to assist your service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

NOTICE:

If you keep driving your vehicle with this light on, after a while, your emission controls may not work as well, your fuel economy may not be as good and your engine may not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that may not be covered by your warranty.

NOTICE:

Modifications made to the engine, transaxle, exhaust or fuel system of your vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect your vehicle's emission controls and may cause the SERVICE ENGINE SOON or CHECK ENGINE light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by your warranty. This may also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

This light should come on, as a check to show you it is working, when the ignition is on and the engine is not running. If the light doesn't come on, have it repaired. This light will also come on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

- **Light Flashing --** A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and may damage the emission control system on your vehicle. Dealer or qualified service center diagnosis and service may be required.
- **Light On Steady --** An emission control system malfunction has been detected on your vehicle. Dealer or qualified service center diagnosis and service may be required.

If the Light Is Flashing

The following may prevent more serious damage to your vehicle:

- Reducing vehicle speed.
- Avoiding hard accelerations.
- Avoiding steep uphill grades.
- If you are towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light stops flashing and remains on steady, see "If the Light Is On Steady" following.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, *stop the vehicle*. Find a safe place to park your vehicle. Turn the key off, wait at least 10 seconds and restart the engine. If the light remains on steady, see "If the Light Is On Steady" following. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps, and drive the vehicle to your dealer or qualified service center for service.

If the Light Is On Steady

You may be able to correct the emission system malfunction by considering the following:

Did you recently put fuel into your vehicle?

If so, reinstall the fuel cap, making sure to fully install the cap. See "Filling Your Tank" in the Index. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap will allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.

Did you just drive through a deep puddle of water?

If so, your electrical system may be wet. The condition will usually be corrected when the electrical system dries out. A few driving trips should turn the light off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Are you low on fuel?

As your engine starts to run out of fuel, your engine may not run as efficiently as designed since small amounts of air are sucked into the fuel line causing a misfire. The system can detect this. Adding fuel should correct this condition. Make sure to install the fuel cap properly. See “Filling Your Tank” in the Index. It will take a few driving trips to turn the light off.

Have you recently changed brands of fuel?

If so, be sure to fuel your vehicle with quality fuel (see “Fuel” in the Index). Poor fuel quality will cause your engine not to run as efficiently as designed. You may notice this as stalling after start-up, stalling when you put the vehicle into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration or stumbling on acceleration. (These conditions may go away once the engine is warmed up.) This will be detected by the system and cause the light to turn on.

If you experience one or more of these conditions, change the fuel brand you use. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

If none of the above steps have made the light turn off, have your dealer or qualified service center check the vehicle. Your dealer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that may have developed.

Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

Some state/provincial and local governments have or may begin programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.

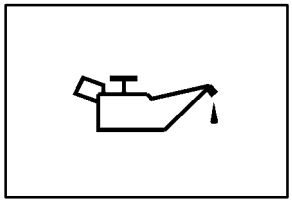
Here are some things you need to know in order to help your vehicle pass an inspection:

Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the SERVICE ENGINE SOON or CHECK ENGINE light is on or not working properly.

Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the OBD (on-board diagnostic) system determines that critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed by the system. The vehicle would be considered not ready for inspection. This can happen if you have recently replaced your battery or if your battery has run down. The diagnostic system is designed to evaluate critical emission control systems during normal driving. This may take several days of routine driving. If you have done this and your vehicle still does not pass the inspection for lack of OBD system readiness, see your dealer or qualified service center to prepare the vehicle for inspection.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Oil Pressure Light



This light tells you if there could be a problem with your engine oil pressure.

The light goes on when you turn your key to ON or START. It goes off once you start your engine. That's a check to be sure the light works. If it doesn't come on, be sure to have it fixed so it will be there to warn you if something goes wrong.

When the light *comes* on and *stays* on, it means that oil isn't flowing through your engine properly. You could be low on oil and you might have some other system problem.

⚠ CAUTION:

Don't keep driving if the oil pressure is low. If you do, your engine can become so hot that it catches fire. You or others could be burned. Check your oil as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced.

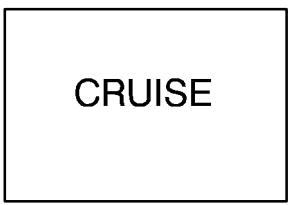
NOTICE:

Damage to your engine from neglected oil problems can be costly and is not covered by your warranty.

Security Light

For information r egarding this light, see "Theft-Deterrent System" in the Index.

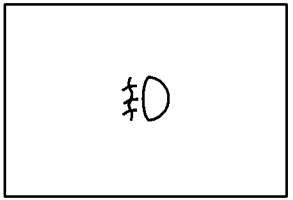
Cruise Control Light



This light comes on whenever you set your vehicle's cruise control.

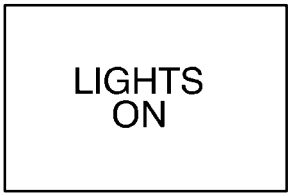
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fog Lamp Light (STS Only)

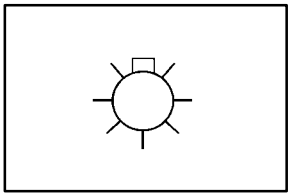


This light will come on when the fog lamp button is pressed. For more information about the fog lamps, see “Fog Lamps” in the Index.

Lights On Reminder Light



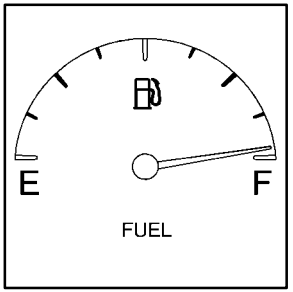
United States



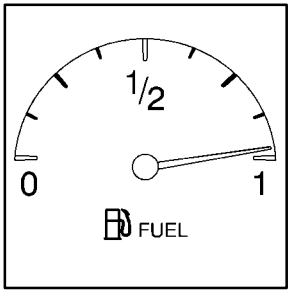
Canada

This telltale comes on whenever the parking lamps are on, so that you know your lights are on.

Fuel Gage



United States



Canada

The fuel gage shows approximately how much fuel is in the tank. It works only when the ignition is in ON.

Here are a few concerns some owners have had about the fuel gage.

All of these situations are normal and do not indicate that anything is wrong.

- At the gas station the gas pump shuts off before the gage reads F.
- The gage may change when you turn, stop quickly or accelerate quickly.
- GAL FUEL USED on the Driver Information Center does not correspond exactly to the amount of fuel remaining as shown on the fuel gage.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driver Information Center (DIC)

This display gives you the status of many of your vehicle's systems. The DIC is also used to display driver personalization features and warning/status messages.

DIC Controls and Displays

INFO: Pressing this button up or down will display the OUTSIDE TEMP, MILES RANGE, MPG AVG, MPG INST, GAL FUEL USED, AVG MPH, TIMER, BATTERY VOLTS OK, ENGINE OIL LIFE, TRANS FLUID LIFE, PHONE (If Equipped) and FEATURE PROGRAMMING.

INFO RESET: Pressing this button will reset the MPG AVG, GAL FUEL USED, MPH AVG, TIMER, ENGINE OIL LIFE, and TRANS FLUID LIFE. For more information about the trip odometer, see "Odometer" in the Index.

ON/OFF: Pressing this button turns the Programming and Personalization Features on and off. (FEATURE PROGRAMMING must be displayed on the DIC to begin actual programming.)

OUTSIDE TEMP: This message shows the outside temperature. After this display has been on the DIC for about five seconds, the words OUTSIDE TEMP will disappear so that only the temperature remains.

MILES RANGE: This message shows about how many miles you can drive without refilling your fuel tank. Once the range drops below 40 miles (64 km) remaining, the display will show LOW.

MPG AVG (Reset): This message shows the approximate fuel economy you have averaged since the last time you reset the value. Press the INFO button to display the MPG AVG (Average Fuel Economy), then press and hold the INFO RESET button until 0.0 MPG AVG is displayed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

GAL FUEL USED (Reset): Press the INFO button to display the GAL FUEL USED on the DIC, then press and hold the INFO RESET button until 0.0 GAL FUEL USED is displayed.

AVG MPH (Reset): This message shows the average speed you have traveled at since the last time you reset the value. Press the INFO button to display the AVG MPH (average speed), then press and hold the INFO RESET button until 0.0 AVG MPH is displayed.

TIMER: This feature is like a stopwatch, in that you can clock the time it takes to get from one point to another.

To operate, press the INFO button to display TIMER. Each of the fields for the hours, minutes and seconds are two numeric digits.

Once TIMER 00:00:00 is displayed, press the ON/OFF button to start the timing feature. Press the ON/OFF button again to stop it. If you will be starting and stopping your vehicle, during a trip for instance, the TIMER feature will automatically start timing where it left off when you last stopped. To reset it, press and hold the INFO RESET button until the display reads TIMER 00:00:00. Press the INFO button to exit from the TIMER function.

ENGINE OIL LIFE (Reset): Press the INFO button to display ENGINE OIL LIFE, then press and hold the INFO RESET button until 100% ENGINE OIL LIFE is displayed. (This only needs to be reset after you have had the oil changed.)

TRANSMISSION FLUID LIFE MONITOR: Under normal conditions, the rate of deterioration of the transmission fluid is slow. See the Maintenance Schedule booklet for proper fluid and change intervals. To reset the transmission fluid life, press the INFO button to display TRANS FLUID LIFE, then press and hold the INFO RESET button until 100% TRANS FLUID LIFE is displayed. (This only needs to be reset after you have had the fluid changed.)

ENG/MET: Press this button to display information in the English (miles) or metric (kilometers) system.

Driver Information Center (DIC) Messages

These messages will appear if there is a problem sensed in one of your vehicle's systems. Vehicles that are first sold in Canada will have a number after each message. This number helps to identify the problem. You must then press INFO or INFO RESET to clear the display screen for further use. However, be sure to take any message that appears on the display screen seriously and note that pressing the INFO or INFO RESET button will only make the message disappear, not the problem.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Most messages can be removed from the display by pressing the INFO or INFO RESET button while the message is being displayed.

DIC messages can also be displayed in French, German, Spanish and Japanese. Contact your dealer to have the language display adjusted for your vehicle.

BATTERY NOT CHARGING - 7: This message will appear if the battery is not being charged. Have the electrical system checked by your dealership at your earliest convenience.

BATTERY SAVER ACTIVE - 27: This message is displayed when the vehicle has detected that the battery voltage is dropping beyond a reasonable point. The battery saver system will start reducing certain features of the vehicle that you may not be able to notice. At the point that features are disabled, this message is displayed. It means that the vehicle is trying to save the charge in the battery. Turn off unnecessary accessories to allow the battery to recharge.

BATTERY VOLTAGE HIGH - 8: This message shows that the electrical charging system is overcharging (more than 16 volts). To avoid being stranded, have the electrical system checked by your dealership. You can reduce the charging overload by using the accessories. Turn on the lamps and radio, set the climate control on AUTO and the fan speed on HI, and turn the rear window defogger on. You can monitor battery voltage on the DIC by pressing the INFO button. The normal range is 11.5 to 15.5 volts when the engine is running.

BATTERY VOLTAGE LOW - 6: This message will appear when the electrical system is charging less than 10.5 volts or if the battery has been drained. If this message appears immediately after starting, it is possible that the generator can still recharge the battery. The battery should recharge while driving but may take a few hours to do so. Consider using an auxiliary charger (be sure to follow the manufacturer's instructions) to boost the battery after returning home or to a final destination. If this message appears while driving or after starting your vehicle and stays on, have it checked immediately to determine the cause of this problem. To help the generator recharge the battery quickly, you can reduce the load on the electrical system by turning off the accessories. You can monitor battery voltage on the DIC by pressing the INFO button. The normal range is 11.5 to 15.5 volts.

CHANGE BRAKE PADS - 125: This message is used to notify you that the brake pads may have worn down. A sensor is connected to the brake pads and is triggered when they wear to a certain point. Have the front and rear brakes serviced by your dealer as soon as possible.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CHANGE ENGINE OIL - 82: This means that the life of the engine oil has expired and it should be changed within 200 miles. See “Engine Oil” and “Filter Recommendations” in the Maintenance Schedule booklet. After an oil change, the Oil Life Indicator must be reset. See “Oil Life Indicator, How to Reset” in the Index.

CHANGE TRANS FLUID - 47: This message will appear when it is time to replace the transaxle fluid. See the Maintenance Schedule booklet for the proper fluid and change intervals.

CHECK BRAKE FLUID - 37: This message will display if the ignition is in ON to inform the driver that the brake fluid level is low. Have the brake system serviced by a technician as soon as possible. See “Brake System Warning Light” in the Index.

CHECK COOLANT LEVEL - 2: This message will appear when there is a low level of engine coolant. Have the cooling system serviced by a technician as soon as possible.

CHECK FUEL GAGE - 50: This message will appear when the fuel supply is less than 5 gallons (18.9 L) and the display is turned off. A single chime will also sound when this message is displayed.

CHECK GAS CAP - 61: This message will appear if the gas cap has not been fully tightened. You should recheck your gas cap to ensure that it’s fully tightened.

CHECK OIL LEVEL - 36: For correct operation of the low oil sensing system, your vehicle should be on a level surface. A false CHECK OIL LEVEL message may appear if the vehicle is parked on grades. The oil level sensing system does not check for actual oil level if the engine has been off for a short period of time, and the oil level is never sensed while the engine is running. If the CHECK OIL LEVEL message appears, and your vehicle has been parked on level ground with the engine off for at least 30 minutes, the oil level should be checked by observing the oil dipstick. Prior to checking the oil level, be sure the engine has been off for a few minutes and your vehicle is on a level surface. Then check the dipstick and add oil if necessary. See “Engine Oil” in the Index.

CHECK WASHER FLUID - 25: This message means that you need washer solvent.

DRIVER DOOR AJAR - 140: This message will display anytime the key is in ON, the transaxle is not in PARK (P) and the driver’s door is open or ajar. A chime will also sound when the vehicle’s speed is greater than 3 mph (4.8 km/h).

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

DRIVER NO. X (1 OR 2) : This message will be displayed with the key in ON and while entering FEATURE PROGRAMMING, but only if the vehicle is equipped with memory seats. The message will show which driver is activating the personalization feature. It will only stay on for five seconds. This message can be customized for you by your dealer.

ENGINE COOLANT HOT, IDLE ENGINE - 44: This message will appear when the engine coolant temperature is over 262°F (128°C). Stop and allow your vehicle to idle in PARK (P) until it cools down and the message is removed. Do not increase engine speed above a normal idle. If it does not cool down, turn off the engine and have it serviced before driving it again. Severe engine damage can result from an overheated engine. See “Engine Overheating” in the Index.

ENGINE HOT-AC OFF - 16: This message displays when the engine coolant becomes hotter than the normal operating temperature. To avoid added strain on a hot engine, the air conditioning compressor is automatically turned off. When the coolant temperature returns to normal, the A/C operation will automatically resume. You can continue to drive your vehicle. If this message continues to appear, have the system repaired as soon as possible to avoid compressor damage.

ENGINE MISFIRE -- EASE OFF GAS PEDAL - 114: An engine misfire has occurred. You’ll need to ease off the gas pedal.

ENGINE OVERHEATED, STOP ENGINE - 42: This message will appear when the engine has overheated. Stop and turn the engine off immediately to avoid severe engine damage. See “Engine Overheating” in the Index. A multiple chime will also sound when this message is displayed.

ENGINE POWER REDUCED - 41: This message informs you that the vehicle is reducing engine power because the transaxle is being placed in gear under conditions that may cause damage to the vehicle’s engine, transaxle or ability to accelerate.

FUEL LEVEL LOW - 11: This message serves as a warning that the fuel level in the tank is critically low. Stop for fuel soon. A single chime will also sound when this message is displayed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

HEADLAMPS SUGGESTED - 23: If it's dark enough outside and the headlamps and Twilight Sentinel® controls are off, a HEADLAMPS SUGGESTED message will display on the DIC. This message informs the driver that turning on the exterior lamps is recommended even though the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) are still illuminated. It has become dark enough outside to require the headlamps and/or other exterior lamps. This message will also appear if the optional Rainsense™ wiping feature is on and the Twilight Sentinel® is off.

ICE POSSIBLE - 13: This message appears when the outside air temperature is cold enough to create icy road conditions.

LEFT REAR DOOR AJAR - 142: The left rear door is open or ajar when this message appears. The ignition must be in ON and the transaxle not in PARK (P) for this message to display. A chime will also sound when the vehicle's speed is greater than 3 mph (4.8 km/h).

OIL PRESSURE LOW STOP ENGINE - 35: If this message appears while the engine is running, stop the engine and do not operate it until the cause of low oil pressure is corrected. Severe damage to the engine can result. A multiple chime will also sound when this message is displayed.

PASSENGER DOOR AJAR - 141: The passenger's door is open or ajar when this message appears. The ignition must be in ON and the transaxle not in PARK (P) for this message to display. A chime will also sound when the vehicle's speed is greater than 3 mph (4.8 km/h).

RIGHT REAR DOOR AJAR - 143: The right rear door is open or ajar when this message appears. The ignition must be in ON and the transaxle not in PARK (P) for this message to display. A chime will also sound when the vehicle's speed is greater than 3 mph (4.8 km/h).

SERVICE AC SYSTEM - 14: This message appears when the electronic sensors that control the air conditioning and heating systems are no longer working. Have the climate control system serviced if you notice a drop in heating and air conditioning efficiency.

SERVICE AIR BAG - 83: There is a problem with the supplemental inflatable restraint (air bag) system when this message appears. Let only a qualified technician work on your vehicle. See your dealership for service at once.

SERVICE CHARGING SYS - 102: This message will display when a problem with the charging system has been detected. Have your vehicle serviced at your dealership.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

SERVICE ELECTRICAL SYS - 106: This message will display if an electrical problem has occurred within the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) or the ignition switch. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealership.

SERVICE FUEL SYSTEM - 101: The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) has detected a problem within the fuel system when this message appears. See your dealership for service.

SERVICE IDLE CONTROL - 107: A problem with the idle control has occurred when this message displays. Take your vehicle to your dealership for service.

SERVICE STABILITY SYS - 54 : If you ever see the SERVICE STABILITY SYS message, it means there may be a problem with your stability enhancement system. If you see this message, try to reset the system (stop; turn off the engine; then start the engine again). If the SERVICE STABILITY SYS message still comes on, it means there is a problem. You should see your dealer for service. Reduce your speed and drive accordingly. A single chime will also sound when this message is displayed.

STABILITY SYS ENGAGED - 55: You may see the STABILITY SYS ENGAGED message on the Driver Information Center. It means that an advanced, computer-controlled system has come on to help your vehicle continue to go in the direction in which you're steering. This stability enhancement system activates when the computer senses that your vehicle is just starting to spin, as it might if you hit a patch of ice or other slippery spot on the road. When the system is on, you may hear a noise or feel a vibration in the brake pedal. This is normal.

When the STABILITY SYS ENGAGED message is on, you should continue to steer in the direction you want to go. The system is designed to help you in bad weather or other difficult driving situations by making the most of whatever road conditions will permit. If the STABILITY SYS ENGAGED message comes on, you'll know that something has caused your vehicle to start to spin, so you should consider slowing down.

SERVICE STEERING SYS - 127: This message is displayed when a problem has been detected in the Magnasteer® variable effort steering system. Service is required.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SERVICE SUSPENSION SYS - 84: This message is displayed to indicate that the suspension system is not operating properly. To correct this problem, have your vehicle serviced at your dealership.

SERVICE THEFT SYSTEM - 34: This message means there is a problem in the Personalized Automotive Security System (PASS-Key® III). A fault has been detected in the system which means that the PASS-Key III system is disabled and is not protecting the vehicle. The vehicle usually restarts, however, you may want to take your vehicle to a proper service center before turning off the engine.

SERVICE TRANSMISSION - 100: See your dealer for repair.

SERVICE VEHICLE SOON - 3: This message is displayed when a non-emissions related powertrain malfunction occurs. Have your vehicle serviced by a technician as soon as possible.

SPEED LIMITED TO 90 - 113: A failure in the suspension control system has occurred when this message appears. The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) determines the speed to which your vehicle is limited. Have your vehicle serviced if this message appears.

STARTING DISABLED REMOVE KEY - 33: This message will appear when the Personalized Automotive Security System (PASS-Key® III) senses that an improper ignition key is being used to try to start the vehicle. Check the ignition key for damage. If it is damaged, it may need to be replaced. If you see no damage, remove the key and try to start the vehicle again. If it still does not start, try another ignition key.

THEFT ATTEMPTED - 40: This message is displayed if the theft system has detected a break-in attempt while you were away from your vehicle.

TOP SPEED FUEL CUT-OFF - 111: This message will appear when the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) senses that the maximum speed for your vehicle has been reached. The speed of your vehicle will surge as the fuel supply is cut off. This allows your vehicle to stay in a safe tire operating range. The top speed is set based on the top speed rating of the tires.

TRACTION ENGAGED - 91 : When your traction control system is limiting wheel spin, the TRACTION ENGAGED message will be displayed. Slippery road conditions may exist if this message is displayed, so adjust your driving accordingly. This message will stay on for a few seconds after the traction control system stops limiting wheel spin.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

TRACTION OFF - 89: This message will be displayed after the traction control has been turned off by the button on the center console.

TRACTION READY - 90: This message informs the driver that the traction control system is available. This occurs when the traction control switch on the console has been returned to ON (pressing the button once turns the traction control system off: pressing the button again turns the system back on). This message will automatically disappear from the display after five seconds.

TRACTION SUSPENDED - 56: This message displays when the traction control system has been temporarily shut off because your vehicle's brakes have overheated. This message does not indicate a problem with your vehicle's traction control system. After a few minutes, the traction control system will be available again and the TRACTION READY message will appear.

TRANS HOT IDLE ENGINE - 112: This message indicates that the transaxle fluid in your vehicle is too hot. Stop and allow your vehicle to idle until it cools down or until this message is removed.

TRUNK OPEN - 24: This message indicates that the trunk is open when the ignition is on.

TURN SIGNAL ON - 20: This message is a reminder, after driving about a mile, that you have the turn signal on. A multiple chime will also sound when this message is displayed.

VEHICLE OVERSPEED - 52: This message is displayed when the vehicle speed exceeds a certain limit as required by some export countries. A continuous chime will also sound when this message is displayed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Programming and Personalization Features (If Equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with personalization, you can program certain features to a preferred setting for up to two people. If your vehicle does not have personalization, then some of the features on your vehicle have been programmed for all drivers. On all vehicles, certain features such as HVAC settings, radio preset settings, exterior lighting at unlock, remote lock and unlock confirmation and automatic door locks have already been programmed for your convenience. If the vehicle is equipped with Personalization, then the seat position, steering column position (if equipped) and the outside mirror positions can also be programmed. The navigation screen preferences (if equipped) will remain at the last set position.

If your vehicle is equipped with personalization, the driver's preferences are recalled by pressing the unlock button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter or by pressing the appropriate memory button "1" or "2" located on the driver's door. Please note that certain features can be programmed not to recall until the key is placed in the ignition. To change feature preferences you must enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING (see below).

All vehicles that have memory seats, have personalization.

Entering FEATURE PROGRAMMING

To begin programming, the ignition must be in ON and your vehicle in PARK (P). If your vehicle has memory, you must press the appropriate memory button "1" or "2", located on the driver's door panel before programming. Press the INFO button one or more times until the FEATURE PROGRAMMING prompt appears on the DIC display. Press the ON/OFF button to enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING. To exit, press the INFO RESET button.

Remote Recall Memory (If Equipped)

Enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING by following the previous instructions and then press the down arrow on the INFO button one or more times until the REMOTE RECALL MEMORY prompt appears. To turn the feature on, press the ON/OFF button until ON is displayed on the DIC. The seat and mirror memory settings that have been previously programmed can be recalled by pressing the unlock button on the RKE transmitter. The steering column will move when the key is inserted in the ignition and turned to ON. To turn the feature off, press the ON/OFF button until OFF is displayed.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Key in Recall (If Equipped)

Enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING by following the previous instructions and then press the down arrow on the INFO button one or more times until the KEY IN RECALL prompt appears on the DIC display. To turn the feature on, press the ON/OFF button until ON appears. The seat and mirror memory settings that have been previously programmed will be recalled when the key is inserted in the ignition. The steering column (if equipped) will move when the key is turned to ON. To turn the feature off, press the ON/OFF button until OFF appears.

Auto Exit Seat (If Equipped)

Enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING by following the previous instructions and then press the down arrow on the INFO button one or more times until the AUTO EXIT SEAT prompt shows on the DIC display. This feature will move the seat to the driver's exit position when the key is turned out of ON (away from START) and the driver's door is opened. To turn this feature on, press the ON/OFF button until ON appears on the DIC. To turn this feature off, press the ON/OFF button until OFF shows.

Auto Exit Steering Wheel (If Equipped)

Enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING by following the previous instructions and then press the down arrow on the INFO button one or more times until the AUTO EXIT STRG WHEEL prompt appears on the DIC display. This feature will move the column to the driver's exit position when the key is turned out of ON (away from START) and the driver's door is opened.

Lights Flash at Unlock

Enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING by following the previous instructions and then press the down arrow on the INFO button one or more times until the LIGHTS FLASH AT UNLOCK prompt appears. To turn this feature on, press the ON/OFF button until ON is displayed on the DIC. If all the doors are closed, the parking lamps will flash twice when the unlock button on the RKE transmitter is pressed. The lamps will not flash if the manual parking lamps or headlamps are active. To turn the feature off, press the ON/OFF button until the OFF prompt appears.

This feature will not work if any door is open.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Lights Flash at Lock

Enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING by following the previous instructions and then press the down arrow on the INFO button one or more times until the LIGHTS FLASH AT LOCK prompt appears on the DIC display. To turn the feature on, press the ON/OFF button until ON appears. If all the doors are closed, the parking lamps will flash once when the lock button on the RKE transmitter is pressed. The lamps will not flash if the manual parking lamps are active. To turn the feature off, press the ON/OFF button until OFF appears.

This feature will not work if any door is open.

Horn Sounds at Lock

Enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING by following the previous instructions and then press the down arrow on the INFO button one or more times until the HORN SOUNDS AT LOCK prompt appears on the DIC display. To turn the feature on, press the ON/OFF button until ON appears. If all the doors are closed, the horn will sound once when the lock button on the RKE transmitter is pressed. To turn the feature off, press the ON/OFF button until OFF appears.

This feature will not work if any door is open.

Exterior Lights at Unlock

This personalization feature enables the driver to program the exterior lamps to turn on or to remain off when using the RKE transmitter to unlock the vehicle.

During dark or night conditions, if exterior lighting is selected, the parking lamps, taillamps, reverse lamps, high-beam headlamps, etc. will turn on for about 20 seconds or until a door is opened, the key is turned out of OFF or the RKE transmitter is used to lock the vehicle.

Enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING by following the previous instructions and then press the INFO button one or more times until the FEATURE PROGRAMMING prompt appears on the DIC display. Press the ON/OFF button to enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING. To exit, press the INFO RESET button. Press the down arrow on the INFO button one or more times until the EXT LIGHTS AT UNLOCK prompt appears.

To turn the feature on, press the ON/OFF button until ON is displayed. To turn the feature off, press the ON/OFF button until OFF is displayed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Doors Lock in Gear

Enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING by following the previous instructions and then press the down arrow on the INFO button one or more times until the DOORS LOCK IN GEAR prompt appears. This feature will automatically lock all doors when the vehicle is shifted out of PARK (P) and all the doors are closed. To turn the feature on, press ON/OFF until ON is displayed on the DIC. To turn the feature off, press ON/OFF until OFF is displayed.

Driver Unlock in PARK (P)

Enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING by following the previous instructions and then press the down arrow on the INFO button one or more times until the DRIVER UNLOCK IN PARK (P) prompt appears. This feature will automatically unlock only the driver's door when the vehicle is shifted into PARK (P). To turn the feature on, press ON/OFF until ON is displayed on the DIC. To turn the feature off, press ON/OFF until OFF is displayed.

Driver Unlock Key Off

Enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING by following the previous instructions and then press the down arrow on the INFO button one or more times until the DRIVER UNLOCK KEY OFF prompt appears. This feature will automatically unlock only the driver's door when the ignition key is turned to OFF. To turn the feature on, press ON/OFF until ON is displayed on the DIC. To turn the feature off, press ON/OFF until OFF is displayed.

Doors Unlock in PARK (P)

Enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING by following the previous instructions and then press the down arrow on the INFO button one or more times until the DOORS UNLOCK IN PARK prompt appears. This feature will automatically unlock all doors when the vehicle is shifted into PARK (P). To turn the feature on, press ON/OFF until ON is displayed on the DIC. To turn the feature off, press ON/OFF until OFF is displayed.

Doors Unlock Key Off

Enter FEATURE PROGRAMMING by following the previous instructions and then press the down arrow on the INFO button one or more times until the DOORS UNLOCK KEY OFF prompt appears. This feature will automatically unlock all doors when the ignition key is turned to OFF. To turn the feature on, press ON/OFF until ON is displayed on the DIC. To turn the feature off, press ON/OFF until OFF is displayed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Mirror To Curb In Reverse (If Equipped)

Press the down arrow on the INFO button one or more times until the MIRROR TO CURB IN REV prompts appears on the DIC display. This feature will move the passenger's outside rearview mirror to a curb view position when the console shifter is placed in REVERSE (R) and it will return the mirror to the last known driving position when the console shifter is moved out of REVERSE (R). To turn this feature on, press the ON/OFF button until ON is displayed on the DIC. To turn the feature off, press the ON/OFF button until OFF is displayed. For more information, see "Curb View Assist Mirror" in the Index.

Driver's Names Set/Recall (If Equipped)

After the FEATURE PROGRAMMING prompt is displayed on the DIC and the ON/OFF button is pressed, the prompts DRIVER NO 1 or DRIVER NO 2 will appear. These prompts correspond to which RKE transmitter button or memory recall button has been pressed on the driver's door armrest. You may have your name and a second driver's name displayed here, replacing the prompts DRIVER NO 1 and DRIVER NO 2. A dealership can program your vehicle to display the names you want. The names will appear whenever the key is turned to ON only if RKE transmitters 1 or 2 are used to enter the vehicle or buttons 1 or 2 on the driver's door are pressed.

Comfort Controls and Radio System Personalization

These features allow both drivers to personalize their own climate control settings as well as their radio settings. For more information, see "Climate Control Personalization" and "Radio Personalization" in the Index.

The outside temperature is always available for display if it has been selected for a DIC display when your vehicle is running unless an overriding DIC message appears. You can change the temperature from Fahrenheit to Celsius by pressing the ENG/MET (English/metric) button on the instrument panel. For more information on the DIC, see "DIC Messages" in the Index.

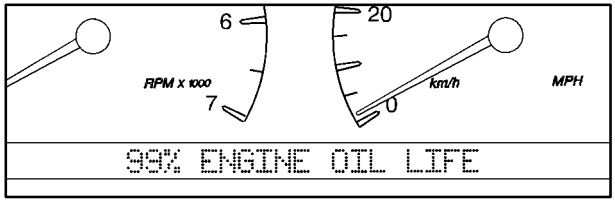
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

The electronic sensor can be affected by road or engine heat during idling, slow driving or when the engine is first stared after a short trip. To ensure proper automatic climate control operation, the outside air temperature display may not update as quickly as expected. This is to allow the air surrounding the outside temperature sensor to be as close to the actual outside conditions as possible. This is determined by how much time has elapsed since the vehicle has been turned off and by vehicle speed.

Continuous Variable Road Sensing Suspension (CVRSS)

The CVRSS automatically adjusts the ride of your vehicle. Automatic ride control is achieved through a computer used to control and monitor the suspension system. The controller receives input from various sensors to determine the proper system response. If the controller detects a problem within the system, the DIC will display a SERVICE SUSPENSION SYS message. If this message appears, have your vehicle serviced at your dealership.

Oil Life Indicator



This feature lets you know when to change the engine oil. It's based on the engine oil temperatures and your driving patterns. To see the display, press the INFO button several times until ENGINE OIL LIFE appears. If you see 99% ENGINE OIL LIFE, 99 percent of your current oil life remains.

The DIC may display a CHANGE ENGINE OIL message. Always keep a written record of the mileage and date when you changed your oil. For more information, see the Maintenance Schedule booklet. If you see CHANGE ENGINE OIL, it means the oil life is gone and you should change the oil right away. The system doesn't check *how much* oil you have, so you'll still have to check for that. To see how, see "Engine Oil" in the Index.

When the oil is changed, you'll need to reset the system. See "Oil Life Indicator, How to Reset" in the Index.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Navigation (Option)

Navigation Display and Controls

This display screen is located in the center of the instrument panel. There are eight “hard” buttons and a touch sensitive screen.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a turn-by-turn navigation guidance system that includes a CD ROM map media covering nine regional areas throughout the contiguous United States. In addition, the system includes intersection and freeway entrances, route planning, a programmable address book, points of interest, a list of restaurants, emergency phone numbers, and a list of hotels and motels for all of the major cities on each regional CD. The navigation system can also communicate with the radio to receive broadcast announcements on traffic, weather information and emergency alert communications. For information on how to use this system, see the “Navigation” supplement.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 3 Comfort Controls and Audio Systems

In this section, you'll find out how to operate the comfort control and audio systems offered with your vehicle. Be sure to read about the particular systems supplied with your vehicle.

3-2 Comfort Controls
3-2 Climate Control Panel
3-6 Air Conditioning
3-6 Heating
3-7 Defrosting and Defogging
3-7 Rear Window Defogger
3-8 Ventilation System
3-10 HVAC Steering Wheel Controls
3-10 Climate Control Personalization (If Equipped)
3-11 Audio Systems
3-11 Setting the Clock
3-11 AM-FM Stereo with Cassette Tape and Compact Disc Player
3-16 AM-FM Stereo with Cassette Tape and Compact Disc Player with Radio Data Systems (RDS) and Digital Signal Processing (DSP) (If Equipped)
3-25 AM-FM Stereo with Cassette Tape and MiniDisc Player with Radio Data Systems (RDS) and Digital Signal Processing (DSP) (If Equipped)
3-34 AM-FM Stereo with Cassette Tape and Radio Data Systems (RDS) with Digital Signal Processing (DSP) and Communiport® Infotainment System (If Equipped)
3-47 Radio Data Systems (RDS) Program Type (PTY) Selections
3-48 Navigation/Radio System (Option)
3-48 CD Adapter Kits
3-49 Console-Mounted CD Changer (Option)
3-51 Radio Personalization with Home and Away Feature (If Equipped)
3-52 Theft-Deterrent Feature
3-52 Audio Steering Wheel Controls
3-53 Understanding Radio Reception
3-53 Tips About Your Audio System
3-54 Care of Your Cassette Tape Player
3-55 Care of Your Compact Discs
3-55 Care of Your Compact Disc Player
3-56 Diversity Antenna System

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Comfort Controls

This section tells you how to make your air system work for you.

Climate Control Panel

Your vehicle is equipped with a dual-zone electronic climate control system. This system can automatically adjust and control temperature, fan speed, air delivery mode, air conditioning operation and air intake. You can use the AUTO (automatic) setting or override the automatic operation by manually altering the controls. If your vehicle is equipped with the Climate Control Personalization feature, you will be able to program your preferred climate control settings by using your remote keyless entry transmitter. See “Climate Control Personalization” in the Index.

AUTO: The AUTO button will turn on the system and automatically adjust the fan blower speed, air delivery mode and temperature to your previously programmed settings.

TEMP: This knob adjusts the air temperature coming through the system. Turn the TEMP knob clockwise to increase the temperature and counterclockwise to decrease the temperature. You may also press the TEMP knob to turn the system on and off. (You can turn the comfort control system on by pressing any button on the panel. The passenger’s TEMP knob only turns off the system of the passenger’s side.) Once the system is turned off, fresh air will continue to flow through the vehicle, and the system will try to maintain the previously set temperature.

Driver’s Side Temperature Knob

You can control the temperature of the driver’s side independently from the passenger’s side. Turn the driver’s side TEMP knob clockwise to increase the temperature and counterclockwise to decrease the temperature.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Passenger's Side Temperature Knob

The right front passenger can control the temperature of air for both the front passenger and rear seat area. (The passenger's and driver's knob adjust from 60° F (16° C) to 90° F (32° C) independent of each other. It is suggested, however, that the passenger's setting stay no more than four degrees warmer or cooler in temperature from the driver's setting.) To turn the system on, press the passenger's side TEMP knob. Turn the passenger's side TEMP knob clockwise to increase the temperature and counterclockwise to decrease the temperature. Press the passenger's side TEMP knob again to turn off the passenger's side system. If the passenger's side is turned off, the driver's side will control the temperature of the entire vehicle.

Automatic Operation

When the system is set for automatic operation, sensors will control the air delivery mode. Air will come from the floor, the instrument panel or windshield outlets. The fan speed will vary as the system maintains the selected temperature setting.

Be careful not to put anything over the electronic solar sensors located near the ends of the instrument panel near the windshield. These sensors are used by the automatic system to regulate temperature.

To find your comfort zone, start with the 75°F (24°C) setting and allow about 30 minutes for the system to regulate. Turn the TEMP knob to adjust the temperature if necessary. If you choose 60°F (16°C), the system will remain at that maximum cooling setting and will not regulate fan speed. If you choose 90°F (32°C), the system will remain at that maximum heating setting and will not regulate fan speed. Choosing either maximum setting will not cause the system to heat or cool any faster.

With the automatic setting, the air conditioning compressor cycles when needed to cool the air. In cold weather, when the system senses the need for heat, the airflow will be directed out the floor outlets. As the interior temperature approaches a desired setting, the blower speed will decrease. To maintain interior comfort, the airflow may move to the instrument panel air outlets and floor outlets (bi-level mode). On bright sunny days in cold weather, the airflow may come out of the air conditioning outlets (A/C mode) to maintain comfort and prevent stuffiness.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If your vehicle is sitting out on a hot day and you have it set on AUTO, the air will first flow out the floor outlets for a few seconds. This is normal. This is to remove hot air from the air outlets. As the air is cooled, the airflow will move through the air conditioning outlets.

To avoid blowing cold air in cold weather, the system will start at reduced fan speeds until warm air is available. The length of reduction depends on the outside air temperature, engine coolant temperature or the time since the engine was last started. As the coolant warms up, the blower fan speed will gradually increase and air will flow from the heater outlets, with some airflow to the windshield to prevent fogging under most normal conditions. If you select defrost mode or a manual fan speed, this function will be skipped.

If you leave your vehicle, the system will remember the control setting the next time you start your engine, except for recirculation and defrost. Each ignition cycle cancels recirculation. Defrost will change to automatic operation when the ignition is shut off and then turned back on.

Manual Operation

You may manually adjust the air delivery mode, fan speed, air input and compressor operation using the following controls.

DEFROST (FRONT): Press this button to quickly remove fog or frost from the windshield. This setting sends most of the airflow to the windshield with only a small amount to the floor outlets.

RECIRCULATION: Press this button to limit the amount of fresh air entering your vehicle. This is helpful when you are trying to cool the air quickly or limit odors entering your vehicle. In the AUTO mode, the system will use recirculation as necessary to cool the air. Pressing the recirculation button will change the operation to a manual mode and the air will recirculate non-stop. Press this button again to turn off the recirculation feature. If you notice the windows fogging, press the recirculation button to exit the recirculation mode. Recirculation is not available in the defrost mode.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

A/C: Press this button to turn the air conditioning compressor on and off. When you press the button, an A/C OFF message appears on the climate control panel's display. Press the button again and the air conditioner will return to automatic control. The system will cool and dehumidify the air inside the vehicle. In the automatic mode, the air conditioning compressor only operates when the system determines it is needed. The A/C OFF function is not available in the defrost mode.

MODE: Press this button (the right or left arrow) to deliver air through the floor, instrument panel or windshield outlets. The climate control system will stay in the selected mode until the MODE button, the DEFROST button or the AUTO button is pressed again. Press the left or right arrow to cycle through the following available modes.

UPPER: This setting directs airflow through the middle instrument panel outlets. Your vehicle is equipped with a driver's side lap cooler which will also come on when the upper vents are being used.

BI-LEVEL: This setting directs air into your vehicle in two ways. Cool air is directed to the upper portion of your body through the four instrument panel outlets while warmed air is directed to the floor.

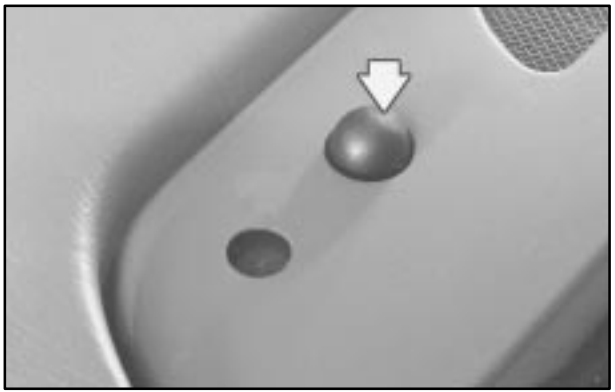
DEFOG: This setting directs air to the floor outlets and toward the windshield.

HEATER: This setting directs warmed air through the floor outlets. Some warm air is diverted to the windshield to minimize fogging.

FAN: The button with the fan symbol adjusts the fan speed. Press the up arrow to increase fan speed and the down arrow to decrease fan speed. Press the AUTO button to set the fan speed for automatic operation. If it is cold outside, the blower may not run in the maximum high fan speed right away. The system checks the temperature of the engine coolant to assure it is warm enough to provide heat. When the engine coolant is warm, the controller allows the fan to gradually increase to a higher speed. This prevents cold air from blowing into the passenger's compartment. Selecting a manual fan speed will override this feature.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Electronic Solar Sensor



The sensor monitors the sun's solar radiation and is located near the end of the instrument panel near the windshield.

The climate control panel uses this information to automatically make the necessary temperature and airflow adjustments to maintain your comfort. The climate control system may supply cooler air to one side of your vehicle, if that side is facing the sun. Be careful not to put anything over the sensor on top of the instrument panel.

Air Conditioning

On hot days, open the windows long enough to let hot inside air escape. This reduces the time it takes for your vehicle to cool down. Then keep your windows closed for the air conditioner to work its best. Your A/C setting may be adjusted automatically or manually. It may also be set separately on the passenger's side from the driver's side. See "Climate Control Panel" earlier in this section.

Heating

Adjust the interior temperature to a comfortable level and if the fan speed needs adjusting, press the up or down arrow. Adjusting the fan speed will cancel the cold air delay.

Outside air will be brought in and sent through the floor, air conditioning or bi-level outlets. The heater works best if you keep your windows closed while using it. In automatic operation, your fan will not run at high speed to minimize warm-up time.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Defrosting and Defogging

Use defrost (front) on cool and humid days to keep the windshield and side windows clear. This setting will remove fog or ice from the windshield quickly in extremely humid or cold conditions. If you desire to have more air on your feet, turn the control to the defog mode. You may do this by pressing the right or left arrow on the MODE button.

Press the up or down arrow on the fan button to control the blower speed. You may also adjust the temperature by turning the TEMP knob.

The recirculation mode and the A/C OFF message are not available in the defrost mode.

Rear Window Defogger

The grid lines you see on the rear window warm the glass. Press this button to turn on the rear defogger.

With it, the rear window and both outside rearview mirrors are heated. The light on the button will come on while the system is activated.

The system will automatically shut off after 10 minutes. If further defogging is desired, press the button again. The system will automatically shut off after five minutes for any cycles after the initial activation.

Note: The lines along the top of the window are for the diversity antenna and are not intended to defog the rear window.

Do not attach a temporary vehicle license, tape or decals across the defogger grid on the rear window.

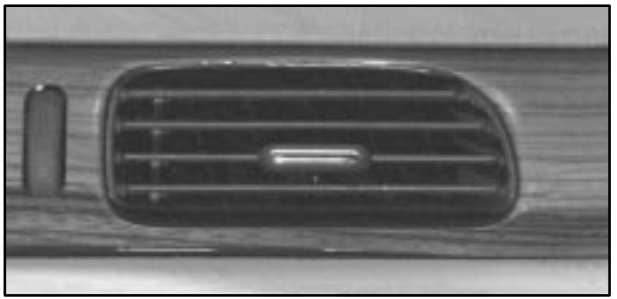
NOTICE:

Scraping the inside of your rear window could cut and damage the heating grids. Your warranty would not cover this damage. Don't put decals there because you might have to scrape them off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

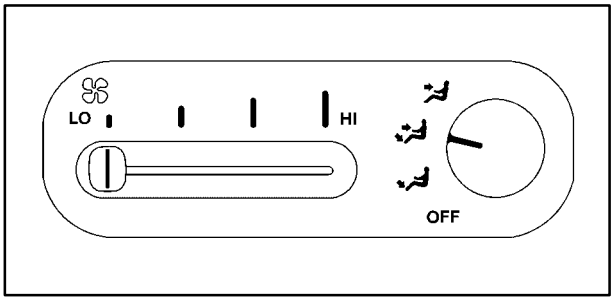
Ventilation System

Your vehicle's flow-through ventilation system supplies outside air into the vehicle when it is moving. Outside air will also enter the vehicle when the heater or the air conditioning fan is running.



The front outlets are located in the center and at each side of the instrument panel. You can adjust the direction of airflow by moving the center control levers or you can stop the airflow by moving the control dial located on each outlet downward.

Rear Ventilation



The direction and quantity of airflow for the rear seats can also be adjusted at the back of the console. Heater outlets are located under the front seat to warm the feet of rear passengers.

Move the fan lever to adjust the blower speed from LO to HI. Adjust the knob to direct the air flow. To reduce airflow to the rear outlets, slide the fan lever all the way to the left. Turning the knob to OFF will completely stop airflow, no matter where the fan blower control is set.

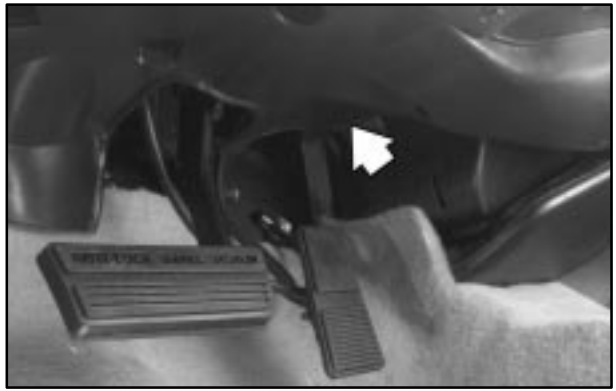
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Ventilation Tips

- Keep the hood and front air inlet free of ice, snow or any other obstruction (such as leaves). The heater and defroster will work far better, reducing the chance of fogging the inside of the windows.
- Keep the air path under the front seats clear of objects. This helps circulate air throughout your vehicle.

Passenger Compartment Air Filter

Passenger compartment air, both outside air and recirculated air, is routed through a passenger compartment filter, which is part of a three-piece filter system. The carbon-treated filter removes certain contaminants from the air, including pollen and dust particles. Reductions in airflow, which may occur more quickly in dusty areas, indicate that the filter needs to be replaced early.



The filter is located inside the air control module, with an access panel under the instrument panel near the accelerator pedal. The filter should be replaced as part of routine scheduled maintenance. See the Maintenance Schedule booklet for replacement intervals. See your dealer for details on changing the filter.

Your vehicle will not be damaged if you choose not to replace the filter once the old one is removed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

HVAC Steering Wheel Controls

Some heating and cooling controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel. Other touch controls operate some audio controls. See “Audio Steering Wheel Controls” in the Index.

TEMP: Press the up arrow on the control to increase the temperature and the down arrow to decrease temperature.

FAN: Press the up arrow on the control to increase the fan speed and the down arrow to decrease fan speed.

Climate Control Personalization (If Equipped)

With this feature, your vehicle will recall the latest climate control settings as adjusted the last time your vehicle was operated. These settings include the set temperatures for driver and passenger, air conditioning, mode and fan speed. (This feature does not recall recirculation or defrost modes.) This feature allows two different drivers to store and recall their own climate control settings. The settings recalled by the climate control system are determined by which Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter (“1” or “2”) was used to enter the vehicle. The number on the back of the RKE transmitter corresponds to driver 1 or to driver 2. After any button is pressed on the RKE transmitter or the key is placed in the ignition, the climate control settings will automatically adjust to where they were last set. The settings can also be changed by briefly pressing buttons 1 or 2 located on the driver’s door.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Audio Systems

Your audio system has been designed to operate easily and give years of listening pleasure. You will get the most enjoyment out of it if you acquaint yourself with it first. Find out what your audio system can do and how to operate all its controls, to be sure you're getting the most out of the advanced engineering that went into it.

Setting the Clock

Press and hold HR or MN until the time display begins to change. Release the button as you get close to the correct time. The time may be set anytime the clock is displayed. There is a two-second delay before the clock goes into time-set mode.

AM-FM Stereo with Cassette Tape and Compact Disc Player

Playing the Radio

PWR/VOL: Press this knob lightly to turn the system on. Press the knob again to turn the system off. To increase volume, turn the knob clockwise. Turn it counterclockwise to decrease volume.

HR or **MN:** Display the time with the ignition off by pressing this button.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SOURCE: Press this button to select a source. Sources include cassette and compact disc. The audio source must be loaded to play. Available loaded sources are shown on the display. If a source is being used, it will be underlined on the display. If none of the audio sources are loaded, NO SOURCE LOADED will appear on the display. Press this button again or press BAND to switch back to the radio.

MUTE: Press this button to silence the system. Press it again to turn on the sound.

Finding a Station

BAND: Press this button to select AM, FM1 or FM2.

TUNE SEEK: When this button is pressed it has two positions. Press this button to the first position to manually tune to higher or lower stations. If this button is held at the first position for a few seconds, the radio will continue tuning until this button is released. Press this button to the second position and release to seek to the next higher or lower radio station.

SCAN: Press this button for less than two seconds to scan radio stations. The radio will go to a station, stop for five seconds, then go on to the next station. Press this button again to stop scanning.

PUSHBUTTONS: The six numbered pushbuttons let you return to your favorite stations and associated tone settings. You can set up to 18 stations (six AM, six FM1 and six FM2). Just:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press BAND to select AM, FM1 or FM2.
3. Tune in the desired station.
4. Press and hold one of the six numbered buttons for more than two seconds until you hear a beep. Whenever you press that numbered button for less than two seconds, the station you set will return.
5. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

When battery power is removed and later applied, you will not have to reset your radio presets because the radio remembers them.

PRESET SCAN: Press and hold SCAN for more than two seconds until you hear a beep to listen to each of your preset stations for five seconds. The radio will go to the first preset station stored on your pushbuttons, stop for five seconds, then go on to the next preset station. Press SCAN again to stop scanning. If a preset station has weak reception, the radio will not stop at the preset station.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting the Tone

TONE: Press and release this button until the desired tone control (BASS, TREBLE or MIDRANGE) is found. The radio keeps separate tone settings for each band, each preset and each source.

LEVEL: After selecting the desired tone control, press the plus (+) or minus (-) symbol on this button to select the desired level.

To save the tone settings for your presets, press and hold the numbered button for the desired preset for more than two seconds until you hear a beep.

Adjusting the Speakers

SPEAKER: Press and release this button until the desired BALANCE or FADE control is found.

LEVEL: After selecting the desired BALANCE or FADE control, press the plus (+) or minus (-) symbol on this button to select the desired level.

Playing a Cassette Tape

With the radio on, insert a cassette tape. The tape will begin playing as soon as it is inserted. When one side of your cassette tape is done playing, auto reverse plays the other side of your cassette tape. Cassette tapes may be loaded with the radio off but they will not start playing until the radio is on. If you want to insert a cassette tape when the ignition is off, first press the eject button.

While the tape is playing, use the VOL, TONE, LEVEL, and SPEAKER controls just as you do for the radio. Other controls may have different functions when a tape is inserted. The display will show an underlined tape symbol. TAPE PLAY will appear on the display when a tape is playing, with an arrow to indicate which side of the tape is playing.

If an error occurs while trying to play a cassette tape, it could be that:

- The cassette tape is tight and the cassette player cannot turn the hubs of the tape. Hold the cassette tape with the open end down and try turning the right hub counterclockwise with a pencil. Flip the tape over and repeat. If the hubs do not turn easily, your cassette tape may be damaged and should not be used in the player. Try a new tape to be sure your player is working properly.
- The cassette tape is broken. (Check to see if your tape is broken. Try a new tape.)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

RW: Press the left arrow to rewind the tape rapidly. The radio will play while the tape rewinds. You may use your station pushbuttons to tune to another radio station while in RW mode. Press the left arrow again to return to playing speed.

FF: Press the right arrow to fast forward to another part of the tape. The radio will play while the tape advances. You may use your station pushbuttons to tune to another radio station while in FF mode. Press the right arrow again to return to playing speed.

TUNE SEEK: When this button is pressed, it has two positions. This button works the same, whether it is pressed to the first or second position. Press this button to seek to the next or previous selection on the tape. Your tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for TUNE SEEK to work. The sound will mute while seeking.

SCAN: Press this button to listen to selections for a few seconds. The tape will go to a selection, stop for a few seconds, then go on to the next selection. Press this button again to stop scanning.

SIDE: Press this button to change the side of the tape that is playing.

⏏ **EJECT:** Press the upward triangle button to the right of the cassette tape player to remove a tape. The radio will play. Eject may be activated with the radio off and/or the ignition off.

CLEAN TAPE: If this message appears on the display, the cassette tape player needs to be cleaned. It will still play tapes, but you should clean it as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tapes and player. See “Care of Your Cassette Tape Player” in the Index. After you clean the player, press and hold the eject button for three seconds to reset the CLEAN TAPE indicator.

Your cassette tape player automatically reduces background noise. Dolby Noise Reduction is manufactured under a license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

Auto CrO_2 allows the cassette tape player to adjust to the type of cassette tape for clearer sound for CrO_2 cassette tapes.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing a Compact Disc

Insert a disc partway into the slot, label side up. The player will pull it in. If the ignition and the radio are on and the underlined compact disc symbol appears on the display, the disc will begin playing. Compact discs may be loaded with the radio off but they will not start playing until the radio is on. If you want to insert a disc when the ignition is off, first press the eject button.

The integral CD player can play the smaller 8 cm compact discs. Full-size compact discs and the smaller compact discs are loaded in the same manner.

If you're driving on a very rough road or if it's very hot, the disc may not play. If the disc comes out, it could be that:

- The disc is upside down.
- It is dirty, scratched or wet.
- The air is very humid. (If so, wait about an hour and try again.)

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error can't be corrected, please contact your dealer.

RW: Press and hold the left arrow to reverse the compact disc. Release it to return to playing speed.

FF: Press and hold the right arrow to fast forward to another part of the compact disc. Release it to return to playing speed.

TUNE SEEK: When this button is pressed, it has two positions. This button works the same, whether it is pressed to the first or second position. Press this button to seek to the next or previous selection on the compact disc.

SCAN: Press this button to listen to selections for a few seconds. The compact disc will go to a selection, stop for a few seconds, then go on to the next selection. Press this button again to stop scanning.

RDM: Press this button to hear the tracks in random, rather than sequential, order. Press RDM again to turn off random play.

⏏ **EJECT:** Press the upward triangle button to the right of the CD player to remove a compact disc. The radio will play. Eject may be activated with the radio off and/or the ignition off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AM-FM Stereo with Cassette Tape and Compact Disc Player with Radio Data Systems (RDS) and Digital Signal Processing (DSP) (If Equipped)

Playing the Radio

PWR/VOL: Press this knob lightly to turn the system on. Press the knob again to turn the system off. To increase volume, turn the knob clockwise. Turn it counterclockwise to decrease volume.

AVC: Your system has a feature called Automatic Volume Control (AVC). With AVC, your audio system monitors the noise in the vehicle. Then, AVC automatically adjusts the volume level so that it always sounds the same to you. To use AVC, press and hold the TONE button until AUTO VOLUME CONTROL OFF appears on the display. Then press the LEVEL plus (+) symbol. AUTO VOLUME CONTROL ON will appear on the display. AVC VOLUME will appear on the display any time you adjust the volume while AVC is on. To turn AVC off, press and hold the TONE button until AUTO VOLUME CONTROL ON appears on the display. Then press the LEVEL minus (-) symbol. AUTO VOLUME CONTROL OFF will appear on the display.

HR or **MN:** Display the time with the ignition off by pressing this button.

SOURCE: Press this button to select a source. Sources include cassette and compact disc. The audio source must be loaded to play. Available loaded sources are shown on the display. If a source is being used, it will be underlined on the display. If none of the audio sources are loaded, NO SOURCE LOADED will appear on the display. Press this button again or press BAND to switch back to the radio.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Finding a Station

BAND: Press this button to select AM, FM1, FM2 or weather.

TUNE SEEK: When this button is pressed it has two positions. Press this button to the first position to manually tune to higher or lower stations. If this button is held at the first position for a few seconds, the radio will continue tuning until this button is released. Press this button to the second position and release to seek to the next higher or lower radio station.

SCAN: Press this button for less than two seconds to scan radio stations. The radio will go to a station, stop for five seconds, then go on to the next station. Press this button again to stop scanning.

PUSHBUTTONS: The six numbered pushbuttons let you return to your favorite stations and associated tone and DSP settings. The RDS PTY mode must be off to use this mode. You can set up to 24 stations (six AM, six FM1, six FM2 and six weather). Just:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press BAND to select AM, FM1, FM2 or weather.
3. Tune in the desired station.
4. Press and hold one of the six numbered buttons for more than two seconds. Whenever you press that numbered button for less than two seconds, the station you set will return.
5. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

When battery power is removed and later applied, you will not have to reset your radio presets because the radio remembers them.

PRESET SCAN: Press and hold SCAN for more than two seconds until you hear a beep to listen to each of your preset stations for five seconds. The radio will go to the first preset station stored on your pushbuttons, stop for five seconds, then go on to the next preset station. Press SCAN again to stop scanning. If a preset station has weak reception, the radio will not stop at the preset station.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using RDS Mode

Your audio system is equipped with Radio Data Systems (RDS). RDS mode gives you many useful new features. When RDS is on, the radio can:

- seek only to stations with the types of programs you want to listen to,
- seek to stations with traffic announcements,
- receive announcements concerning local and national emergencies,
- receive and display messages from radio stations and
- search for a stronger station when a station is too weak for listening.

RDS features are only available for use on FM stations which broadcast RDS information.

RDS SELECT: Press this button to use the alternate RDS functions (RDS, TA, MSG, PTY and < PTY >) located on the six numbered pushbuttons. RDS SELECT: will appear on the display. The alternate RDS functions are only available when you are using the FM band of your radio.

RDS (1): With RDS off, press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button to turn RDS on. The RDS display will turn on. You must have RDS on to use the new RDS functions. The RDS display will also turn on if one of the other RDS function buttons has been pressed on. If you are tuned to a station broadcasting RDS information, the station's call letters and Program Type (PTY) will replace the station's frequency on the display. After five seconds, the program type will be replaced on the display by the station's program type name. The program type and program type name may be the same or different. Press BAND to recall the frequency and program type displays. If the radio is tuned to a station that is not broadcasting RDS information, the station's frequency will remain on the display. While RDS is on, the radio will search for a stronger station in the network when a station gets too weak for listening. Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button again to turn RDS off. All RDS functions will be turned off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

REGION: You can also use the RDS button to access the region function. When an RDS station becomes weak, this function searches for a stronger station within the same network. A network can span a great distance. One network can have stations spread across a country or continent. Each network breaks down into regions. With regions, local news items like weather and traffic are available to you. When the region function is on, the radio only searches for stations in the same network and region. You can only use the region function when RDS is already on. Press the RDS SELECT button. Then press and hold the RDS button for two seconds. REGION: ON will appear on the display. While REGION: ON appears on the display, press the RDS button again to turn the region function off. REGION: OFF will appear on the display. The region function can be turned on again by pressing the RDS button.

TA (2): Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button to receive traffic announcements. The radio will turn on the TA display. TP will appear on the display if the tuned station broadcasts traffic announcements. You may also receive traffic announcements from stations in the network related to the tuned station. If the current tuned station does not broadcast traffic announcements, the radio will seek to a station which does. When the radio finds a station which broadcasts traffic announcements, it will stop. If no station is found, NONE FOUND will appear on the display and the TA icon will turn off. When SEEK or SCAN is pressed with the traffic announcement function on, the radio will only stop at stations which broadcast traffic announcements.

While a traffic announcement plays, the radio uses a special type of volume called TA volume. To increase TA volume, turn the PWR/VOL knob clockwise. Turn it counterclockwise to decrease volume. TA VOLUME will appear on the display while the volume is being adjusted.

When a traffic announcement comes on the tuned radio station or a related network station, you will hear it, even if the volume is muted or a cassette tape or compact disc is playing. If the radio tunes to a related network station for a traffic announcement, it will return to the original station when the announcement is finished. If the cassette tape or compact disc player was being used, the tape or compact disc will stay in the player and resume play at the point where it stopped.

Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button again to turn TA off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

MSG (3): When RDS is on, if the current station has a message, MSG will appear on the display. Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button to see the message. If the whole message does not appear on the display, parts of the message will appear every three seconds until the message is completed. To see the parts of the message faster than every three seconds, press this button again. A new group of words will appear on the display. Once the complete message has been displayed, MSG will disappear from the display until another new MSG is received.

PTY (4): This button is used to turn on and off Program Type (PTY) seeks and scans. Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button. The PTY display will turn on. RDS SELECT: PTY NEWS will appear on the display for three seconds. (The PTY shown will be the last PTY selected.) Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button again to turn the PTY display off.

< PTY > (5) (6): With RDS on, press the RDS SELECT button, followed by < or >. The PTY display will turn on, if it is not already on. RDS SELECT: PTY NEWS will appear on the display for three seconds. (The PTY shown will be the last PTY selected.) While this message is displayed, use < and > to move up and down the PTY list. If you pause on a PTY for three seconds, PRESET PTY: NEWS will appear on the display. While this message is displayed, you can save the PTY in a preset by pressing one of the six numbered pushbuttons until you hear a beep. Allow three seconds for the message to disappear if you do not want to save the PTY in a preset. See “Radio Data Systems (RDS) Program Type (PTY) Selections” in the Index.

When the PTY display is on, press SEEK and SCAN to find radio stations of the PTY you want to listen to. The last PTY selected will be used for seek and scan modes. If a station with the selected PTY is not found, NONE FOUND will appear on the display. If both PTY and TA are on, the radio will search for stations with traffic announcements and the selected PTY.

PUSHBUTTONS: The six numbered pushbuttons let you return to your favorite Program Types (PTYs). These buttons have factory PTY presets. See “Radio Data Systems (RDS) Program Type (PTY) Selections” in the Index. You can set up to 12 PTYs (six FM1 and six FM2). Just:

1. Turn PTY on.
2. Press BAND to select FM1 or FM2.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Tune in an RDS station with the PTY you desire.
4. Press and hold one of the six numbered buttons for more than two seconds until you hear a beep. Whenever you press that numbered button for less than two seconds, the PTY you set will return.
5. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

When battery power is removed and later applied, you will not have to reset your RDS presets because the radio remembers them.

HR or **MN:** Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by one of these buttons to display the time for the current station. STATION TIME IS will be displayed. If a time has not been sent to the radio, NO STATION TIME will be displayed. If you have recently tuned to the station, you may need to wait a minute before the time is available to the radio. To set the clock to the current displayed station time, press and hold HR or MN until TIME UPDATED is displayed. There is a two second delay before the time is updated. RDS mode does not have to be on to use this function, but you must be tuned to an FM RDS station.

ALERT: This type of announcement warns of national or local emergencies. You will not be able to turn off alert announcements. Alert announcements will come on even if RDS mode is turned off. ALERT appears on the display when an alert announcement plays. The radio uses TA volume during these announcements. To increase volume, turn the PWR/VOL knob clockwise. Turn it counterclockwise to decrease volume. TA VOLUME will appear on the display while the volume is being adjusted. When an alert announcement comes on the tuned radio station or a related network station, you will hear it, even if the volume is muted or a cassette tape or compact disc is playing. If the radio tunes to a related network station for an alert announcement, it will return to the original station when the announcement is finished. If the cassette tape or compact disc player is playing, play will stop for the announcement and resume when the announcement is finished.

Setting the Tone

TONE: Press and release this button until the desired tone control (BASS, TREBLE or MIDRANGE) is found. The radio keeps separate tone settings for each band, preset (except weather band presets) and source.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

LEVEL: After selecting the desired tone control, press the plus (+) or minus (-) symbol on this button to select the desired level.

To save the tone settings for your presets, press and hold the numbered button for the desired preset for more than two seconds until you hear a beep.

Using DSP Mode

- **DSP:** The Digital Signal Processing (DSP) feature is used to provide a choice of four different listening experiences: TALK, FRONT SEAT, AMBIENCE and SPACIOUS. DSP can be used while listening to the radio, the cassette tape player or the CD player. Press this button to turn DSP on. Press and release this button until you reach the desired selection. To turn DSP off, press and hold this button until DSP OFF appears on the display. When DSP OFF is displayed, the system will provide the best overall Bose® performance. The radio keeps separate DSP settings for each band (except weather band, which is always set to TALK), preset and source.
- **TALK:** This setting is used when listening to non-musical material such as news, talk shows, sports broadcasts and books on tape. TALK makes spoken words sound very clear.
- **FRONT SEAT:** This setting adjusts the audio to give the front seat occupants the best possible sound qualities. FRONT SEAT can be used at any time for any material. Rear seat passengers in the vehicle may not get the same effect.
- **AMBIENCE:** This setting is used to enhance the stereo effect.
- **SPACIOUS:** This setting is used to make the listening space seem larger.

Adjusting the Speakers

TONE: Press and release this button until the desired BALANCE or FADE control is found.

LEVEL: After selecting the desired BALANCE or FADE control, press the plus (+) or minus (-) symbol on this button to select the desired level.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing a Cassette Tape

With the radio on, insert a cassette tape. The tape will begin playing as soon as it is inserted. When one side of your cassette tape is done playing, auto reverse plays the other side of your cassette tape. Cassette tapes may be loaded with the radio off but they will not start playing until the radio is on. If you want to insert a cassette tape when the ignition is off, first press the eject button.

While the tape is playing, use the VOL, TONE, LEVEL and DSP controls just as you do for the radio. Other controls may have different functions when a tape is inserted. The display will show an underlined tape symbol. TAPE PLAY will appear on the display when a tape is playing, with an arrow to indicate which side of the tape is playing.

If an error occurs while trying to play a cassette tape, it could be that:

- The cassette tape is tight and the cassette player cannot turn the hubs of the tape. Hold the cassette tape with the open end down and try turning the right hub counterclockwise with a pencil. Flip the tape over and repeat. If the hubs do not turn easily, your cassette tape may be damaged and should not be used in the player. Try a new tape to be sure your player is working properly.
- The cassette tape is broken. (Check to see if your tape is broken. Try a new tape.)

RW: Press the left arrow to rewind the tape rapidly. The radio will play while the tape rewinds. You may use your station pushbuttons to tune to another radio station while in RW mode. Press the left arrow again to return to playing speed.

FF: Press the right arrow to fast forward to another part of the tape. The radio will play while the tape advances. You may use your station pushbuttons to tune to another radio station while in FF mode. Press the right arrow again to return to playing speed.

TUNE SEEK: When this button is pressed, it has two positions. This button works the same, whether it is pressed to the first or second position. Press this button to seek to the next or previous selection on the tape. Your tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for TUNE SEEK to work. The sound will mute while seeking.

SCAN: Press this button to listen to selections for a few seconds. The tape will go to a selection, stop for a few seconds, then go on to the next selection. Press this button again to stop scanning.

SIDE: Press this button to change the side of the tape that is playing.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⏏ **EJECT:** Press the upward triangle button to the right of the cassette tape player to remove a tape. The radio will play. Eject may be activated with the radio off and/or the ignition off.

CLEAN TAPE: If this message appears on the display, the cassette tape player needs to be cleaned. It will still play tapes, but you should clean it as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tapes and player. See “Care of Your Cassette Tape Player” in the Index. After you clean the player, press and hold the eject button for three seconds to reset the CLEAN TAPE indicator. The radio will display CLEAN TAPE MSG CLEARED to show that the indicator was reset.

Your cassette tape player automatically reduces background noise. Dolby Noise Reduction is manufactured under a license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

Auto CrO_2 allows the cassette tape player to adjust to the type of cassette tape for clearer sound for CrO_2 cassette tapes.

Playing a Compact Disc

Insert a disc partway into the slot, label side up. The player will pull it in. If the ignition and the radio are on and the underlined compact disc symbol appears on the display, the disc will begin playing. Compact discs may be loaded with the radio off but they will not start playing until the radio is on. If you want to insert a disc when the ignition is off, first press the eject button.

The integral CD player can play the smaller 8 cm compact discs. Full-size compact discs and the smaller compact discs are loaded in the same manner.

If you’re driving on a very rough road or if it’s very hot, the disc may not play. If the disc comes out, it could be that:

- The disc is upside down.
- It is dirty, scratched or wet.
- The air is very humid. (If so, wait about an hour and try again.)

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error can’t be corrected, please contact your dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

RW: Press and hold the left arrow to reverse the compact disc. Release it to return to playing speed.

FF: Press and hold the right arrow to fast forward to another part of the compact disc. Release it to return to playing speed.

TUNE SEEK: When this button is pressed, it has two positions. This button works the same, whether it is pressed to the first or second position. Press this button to seek to the next or previous selection on the compact disc.

SCAN: Press this button to listen to selections for a few seconds. The compact disc will go to a selection, stop for a few seconds, then go on to the next selection. Press this button again to stop scanning.

RDM: Press this button to hear the tracks in random, rather than sequential, order. Press RDM again to turn off random play.

⏏ **EJECT:** Press the upward triangle button to the right of the compact disc player to remove a compact disc. The radio will play. Eject may be activated with the radio off and/or the ignition off.

AM-FM Stereo with Cassette Tape and MiniDisc Player with Radio Data Systems (RDS) and Digital Signal Processing (DSP) (If Equipped)

Playing the Radio

PWR/VOL: Press this knob lightly to turn the system on. Press the knob again to turn the system off. To increase volume, turn the knob clockwise. Turn it counterclockwise to decrease volume.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AVC: Your system has a feature called Automatic Volume Control (AVC). With AVC, your audio system monitors the noise in the vehicle. Then, AVC automatically adjusts the volume level so that it always sounds the same to you. To use AVC, press and hold the TONE button until AUTO VOLUME CONTROL OFF appears on the display. Then press the LEVEL plus (+) symbol. AUTO VOLUME CONTROL ON will appear on the display. AVC VOLUME will appear on the display any time you adjust the volume while AVC is on. To turn AVC off, press and hold the TONE button until AUTO VOLUME CONTROL ON appears on the display. Then press the LEVEL minus (-) symbol. AUTO VOLUME CONTROL OFF will appear on the display.

HR or **MN:** Display the time with the ignition off by pressing this button.

SOURCE: Press this button to select a source. Sources include cassette and MiniDisc. The audio source must be loaded to play. Available loaded sources are shown on the display. If a source is being used, it will be underlined on the display. If none of the audio sources are loaded, NO SOURCE LOADED will appear on the display. Press this button again or press BAND to switch back to the radio.

Finding a Station

BAND: Press this button to select AM, FM1, FM2 or weather.

TUNE SEEK: When this button is pressed it has two positions. Press this button to the first position to manually tune to higher or lower stations. If this button is held at the first position for a few seconds, the radio will continue tuning until this button is released. Press this button to the second position and release to seek to the next higher or lower radio station.

SCAN: Press this button for less than two seconds to scan radio stations. The radio will go to a station, stop for five seconds, then go on to the next station. Press this button again to stop scanning.

PUSHBUTTONS: The six numbered pushbuttons let you return to your favorite stations and associated tone and DSP settings. The RDS PTY mode must be off to use this mode. You can set up to 24 stations (six AM, six FM1, six FM2 and six weather). Just:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press BAND to select AM, FM1, FM2 or weather.
3. Tune in the desired station.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Press and hold one of the six numbered buttons for more than two seconds until you hear a beep. Whenever you press that numbered button for less than two seconds, the station you set will return.
5. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

When battery power is removed and later applied, you will not have to reset your radio presets because the radio remembers them.

PRESET SCAN: Press and hold SCAN for more than two seconds until you hear a beep to listen to each of your preset stations for five seconds. The radio will go to the first preset station stored on your pushbuttons, stop for five seconds, then go on to the next preset station. Press SCAN again to stop scanning. If a preset station has weak reception, the radio will not stop at the preset station.

Using RDS Mode

Your audio system is equipped with Radio Data Systems (RDS). RDS mode gives you many useful new features. When RDS is on, the radio can:

- seek only to stations with the types of programs you want to listen to,
- seek to stations with traffic announcements,
- receive announcements concerning local and national emergencies,
- receive and display messages from radio stations and
- search for a stronger station when a station is too weak for listening.

RDS features are only available for use on FM stations which broadcast RDS information.

RDS SELECT: Press this button to use the alternate RDS functions (RDS, TA, MSG, PTY and < PTY >) located on the six numbered pushbuttons. RDS SELECT will appear on the display. The alternate RDS functions are only available when you are using the FM band of your radio.

RDS (1): With RDS off, press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button to turn RDS on. The RDS display will turn on. You must have RDS on to use the new RDS functions. The RDS display will also turn on if one of the other RDS function buttons has been pressed on. If you are tuned to a station broadcasting RDS information, the station's call letters and Program Type (PTY) will replace the station's frequency on the display. After five seconds, the program type will be replaced on the display by the station's program type name. The program type and program type name may be the same or different. Press BAND to recall the frequency and program type displays.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the radio is tuned to a station that is not broadcasting RDS information, the station's frequency will remain on the display. While RDS is on, the radio will search for a stronger station in the network when a station gets too weak for listening. Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button again to turn RDS off. All RDS functions will be turned off.

REGION: You can also use the RDS button to access the region function. When an RDS station becomes weak, this function searches for a stronger station within the same network. A network can span a great distance. One network can have stations spread across a country or continent. Each network breaks down into regions. With regions, local news items like weather and traffic are available to you. When the region function is on, the radio only searches for stations in the same network and region. You can only use the region function when RDS is already on. Press the RDS SELECT button. Then press and hold the RDS button for two seconds. REGION: ON will appear on the display. While REGION: ON appears on the display, press the RDS button again to turn the region function off. REGION: OFF will appear on the display. The region function can be turned on again by pressing the RDS button.

TA (2): Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button to receive traffic announcements. The radio will turn on the TA display. TP will appear on the display if the tuned station broadcasts traffic announcements. You may also receive traffic announcements from stations in the network related to the tuned station. If the current tuned station does not broadcast traffic announcements, the radio will seek to a station which does. When the radio finds a station which broadcasts traffic announcements, it will stop. If no station is found, NONE FOUND will appear on the display. When SEEK or SCAN is pressed with the traffic announcement function on, the radio will only stop at stations which broadcast traffic announcements.

While a traffic announcement plays, the radio uses a special type of volume called TA volume. To increase TA volume, turn the PWR/VOL knob clockwise. Turn it counterclockwise to decrease volume. TA VOLUME will appear on the display while the volume is being adjusted.

When a traffic announcement comes on the tuned radio station or a related network station, you will hear it, even if the volume is muted or a cassette tape or MiniDisc is playing. If the radio tunes to a related network station for a traffic announcement, it will return

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

to the original station when the announcement is finished. If the cassette tape or MiniDisc player was being used, the tape or MiniDisc will stay in the player and resume play at the point where it stopped.

Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button again to turn TA off.

MSG (3): When RDS is on, if the current station has a message, MSG will appear on the display. Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button to see the message. If the whole message does not appear on the display, parts of the message will appear every three seconds until the message is completed. To see the parts of the message faster than every three seconds, press this button again. A new group of words will appear on the display. Once the complete message has been displayed, MSG will disappear from the display until another new MSG is received.

PTY (4): This button is used to turn on and off Program Type (PTY) seeks and scans. Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button. The PTY display will turn on. RDS SELECT: PTY NEWS will appear on the display for three seconds. (The PTY shown will be the last PTY selected.) Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button again to turn the PTY display off.

< PTY > (5) (6): With RDS on, press the RDS SELECT button, followed by < or >. The PTY display will turn on, if it is not already on. RDS SELECT: PTY NEWS will appear on the display for three seconds. (The PTY shown will be the last PTY selected.) While this message is displayed, use < and > to move up and down the PTY list. If you pause on a PTY for three seconds, PRESET PTY: NEWS will appear on the display. While this message is displayed, you can save the PTY in a preset by pressing one of the six numbered pushbuttons until you hear a beep. Allow three seconds for the message to disappear if you do not want to save the PTY in a preset. See “Radio Data Systems (RDS) Program Type (PTY) Selections” in the Index.

When the PTY display is on, press SEEK and SCAN to find radio stations of the PTY you want to listen to. The last PTY selected will be used for seek and scan modes. If a station with the selected PTY is not found, NONE FOUND will appear on the display. If both PTY and TA are on, the radio will search for stations with traffic announcements and the selected PTY.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

PUSHBUTTONS: The six numbered pushbuttons let you return to your favorite Program Types (PTYs). These buttons have factory PTY presets. See “Radio Data Systems (RDS) Program Type (PTY) Selections” in the Index. You can set up to 12 PTYs (six FM1 and six FM2). Just:

1. Turn PTY on.
2. Press BAND to select FM1 or FM2.
3. Tune in an RDS station with the PTY you desire.
4. Press and hold one of the six numbered buttons for more than two seconds until you hear a beep. Whenever you press that numbered button for less than two seconds, the PTY you set will return.
5. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

When battery power is removed and later applied, you will not have to reset your RDS presets because the radio remembers them.

HR or **MN:** Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by one of these buttons to display the time for the current station. STATION TIME IS will be displayed. If a time has not been sent to the radio, NO STATION TIME will be displayed. If you have recently tuned to the station, you may need to wait a minute before the time is available to the radio. To set the clock to the current displayed station time, press and hold HR or MN until TIME UPDATED is displayed. There is a two second delay before the time is updated. RDS mode does not have to be on to use this function, but you must be tuned to an FM RDS station.

ALERT: This type of announcement warns of national or local emergencies. You will not be able to turn off alert announcements. Alert announcements will come on even if RDS mode is turned off. ALERT appears on the display when an alert announcement plays. The radio uses TA volume during these announcements. To increase volume, turn the PWR/VOL knob clockwise. Turn it counterclockwise to decrease volume. TA VOLUME will appear on the display while the volume is being adjusted. When an alert announcement comes on the tuned radio station or a related network station, you will hear it, even if the volume is muted or a cassette tape or MiniDisc is playing. If the radio tunes to a related network station for an alert announcement, it will return to the original station when the announcement is finished. If the cassette tape or MiniDisc player is playing, play will stop for the announcement and resume when the announcement is finished.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting the Tone

TONE: Press and release this button until the desired tone control (BASS, TREBLE or MIDRANGE) is found. The radio keeps separate tone settings for each band, preset (except weather band presets) and source.

LEVEL: After selecting the desired tone control, press the plus (+) or minus (-) symbol on this button to select the desired level.

To save the tone settings for your presets, press and hold the numbered button for the desired preset for more than two seconds until you hear a beep.

Using DSP Mode

DSP: The Digital Signal Processing (DSP) feature is used to provide a choice of four different listening experiences: TALK, FRONT SEAT, AMBIENCE and SPACIOUS. DSP can be used while listening to the radio, the cassette tape player or the MiniDisc player. Press this button to turn DSP on. Press and release this button until you reach the desired selection. To turn DSP off, press and hold this button until DSP OFF appears on the display. When DSP OFF is displayed, the system will provide the best overall Bose performance. The radio keeps separate DSP settings for each band (except weather band, which is always set to TALK), preset and source.

- **TALK:** This setting is used when listening to non-musical material such as news, talk shows, sports broadcasts and books on tape. TALK makes spoken words sound very clear.
- **FRONT SEAT:** This setting adjusts the audio to give the front seat occupants the best possible sound qualities. FRONT SEAT can be used at any time for any material. Rear seat passengers in the vehicle may not get the same effect.
- **AMBIENCE:** This setting is used to enhance the stereo effect.
- **SPACIOUS:** This setting is used to make the listening space seem larger.

Adjusting the Speakers

TONE: Press and release this button until the desired BALANCE or FADE control is found.

LEVEL: After selecting the desired BALANCE or FADE control, press the plus (+) or minus (-) symbol on this button to select the desired level.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing a Cassette Tape

With the radio on, insert a cassette tape. The tape will begin playing as soon as it is inserted. When one side of your cassette tape is done playing, auto reverse plays the other side of your cassette tape. Cassette tapes may be loaded with the radio off but they will not start playing until the radio is on. If you want to insert a cassette tape when the ignition is off, first press the eject button.

While the tape is playing, use the VOL, TONE, LEVEL and DSP controls just as you do for the radio. Other controls may have different functions when a tape is inserted. The display will show an underlined tape symbol. TAPE PLAY will appear on the display when a tape is playing, with an arrow to indicate which side of the tape is playing.

If an error occurs while trying to play a cassette tape, it could be that:

- The cassette tape is tight and the cassette player cannot turn the hubs of the tape. Hold the cassette tape with the open end down and try turning the right hub counterclockwise with a pencil. Flip the tape over and repeat. If the hubs do not turn easily, your cassette tape may be damaged and should not be used in the player. Try a new tape to be sure your player is working properly.
- The cassette tape is broken. (Check to see if your tape is broken. Try a new tape.)

RW: Press the left arrow to rewind the tape rapidly. The radio will play while the tape rewinds. You may use your station pushbuttons to tune to another radio station while in RW mode. Press the left arrow again to return to playing speed.

FF: Press the right arrow to fast forward to another part of the tape. The radio will play while the tape advances. You may use your station pushbuttons to tune to another radio station while in FF mode. Press the right arrow again to return to playing speed.

TUNE SEEK: When this button is pressed, it has two positions. This button works the same, whether it is pressed to the first or second position. Press this button to seek to the next or previous selection on the tape. Your tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for TUNE-SEEK to work. The sound will mute while seeking.

SCAN: Press this button to listen to selections for a few seconds. The tape will go to a selection, stop for a few seconds, then go on to the next selection. Press this button again to stop scanning.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

SIDE: Press this button to change the side of the tape that is playing.

⏏ **EJECT:** Press the upward triangle button to the right of the cassette tape player to remove a tape. The radio will play. Eject may be activated with the radio off and/or the ignition off.

CLEAN TAPE: If this message appears on the display, the cassette tape player needs to be cleaned. It will still play tapes, but you should clean it as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tapes and player. See “Care of Your Cassette Tape Player” in the Index. After you clean the player, press and hold the eject button for three seconds to reset the CLEAN TAPE indicator. The radio will display CLEAN TAPE MSG CLEARED to show that the indicator was reset.

Your cassette tape player automatically reduces background noise. Dolby Noise Reduction is manufactured under a license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

Auto CrO_2 allows the cassette tape player to adjust to the type of cassette tape for clearer sound for CrO_2 cassette tapes.

Playing a MiniDisc

Insert a disc partway into the slot, label side up. The player will pull it in. If the ignition and the radio are on and the underlined MiniDisc symbol appears on the display, the disc will begin playing. MiniDiscs may be loaded with the radio off but they will not start playing until the radio is on. If you want to insert a disc when the ignition is off, first press the eject button.

While a MiniDisc is playing, MD TRACK number will appear on the display followed by ALBUM title, then TRACK title. The display then reverts back to showing MD TRACK number.

If you’re driving on a very rough road or if it’s very hot, the disc may not play. If the disc comes out, it could be that:

- It is dirty, scratched or wet.
- The air is very humid. (If so, wait about an hour and try again.)

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error can’t be corrected, please contact your dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

RW: Press and hold the left arrow to reverse the MiniDisc. Release it to return to playing speed.

FF: Press and hold the right arrow to fast forward to another part of the MiniDisc. Release it to return to playing speed.

TUNE SEEK: When this button is pressed, it has two positions. This button works the same, whether it is pressed to the first or second position. Press this button to seek to the next or previous selection on the MiniDisc.

SCAN: Press this button to listen to selections for a few seconds. The MiniDisc will go to a selection, stop for a few seconds, then go on to the next selection. Press this button again to stop scanning.

RDM: Press this button to hear the tracks in random, rather than sequential, order. Press RDM again to turn off random play.

⏏ **EJECT:** Press the upward triangle button to the right of the MiniDisc player to remove a MiniDisc. The radio will play. Eject may be activated with the radio off and/or the ignition off.

AM-FM Stereo with Cassette Tape and Radio Data Systems (RDS) with Digital Signal Processing (DSP) and Communiport® Infotainment System (If Equipped)

Bose® Radio Not Shown

Playing the Radio

PWR/VOL: Press this knob lightly to turn the system on. Press the knob again to turn the system off. To increase volume, turn the knob clockwise. Turn it counterclockwise to decrease volume.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

AVC: Your system has a feature called Automatic Volume Control (AVC). With AVC, your audio system monitors the noise in the vehicle. Then, AVC automatically adjusts the volume level so that it always sounds the same to you. To use AVC, press and hold the TONE button until AUTO VOLUME CONTROL OFF appears on the display. Then press the LEVEL plus (+) symbol. AUTO VOLUME CONTROL ON will appear on the display. AVC VOLUME will appear on the display any time you adjust the volume while AVC is on. To turn AVC off, press and hold the TONE button until AUTO VOLUME CONTROL ON appears on the display. Then press the LEVEL minus (-) symbol. AUTO VOLUME CONTROL OFF will appear on the display.

HR or **MN:** Display the time with the ignition off by pressing this button.

SOURCE: Press this button to select a source. Sources include cassette and remote CD changer. The audio source must be loaded to play. Available loaded sources are shown on the display. If a source is being used, it will be underlined on the display. If none of the audio sources are loaded, NO SOURCE LOADED will appear on the display. Press this button again or press BAND to switch back to the radio.

Finding a Station

BAND: Press this button to select AM, FM1, FM2 or weather.

TUNE SEEK: When this button is pressed it has two positions. Press this button to the first position to manually tune to higher or lower stations. If this button is held at the first position for a few seconds, the radio will continue tuning until this button is released. Press this button to the second position and release to seek to the next higher or lower radio station.

SCAN: Press this button for less than two seconds to scan radio stations. The radio will go to a station, stop for five seconds, then go on to the next station. Press this button again to stop scanning.

PUSHBUTTONS: The six numbered pushbuttons let you return to your favorite stations and associated tone and DSP settings if applicable. The RDS PTY mode must be off to use this mode. You can set up to 24 stations (six AM, six FM1, six FM2 and six weather). Just:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press BAND to select AM, FM1, FM2 or weather.
3. Tune in the desired station.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Press and hold one of the six numbered buttons for more than two seconds until you hear a beep. Whenever you press that numbered button for less than two seconds, the station you set will return.
5. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

When battery power is removed and later applied, you will not have to reset your radio presets because the radio remembers them.

PRESET SCAN: Press and hold SCAN for more than two seconds until you hear a beep to listen to each of your preset stations for five seconds. The radio will go to the first preset station stored on your pushbuttons, stop for five seconds, then go on to the next preset station. Press SCAN again to stop scanning. If a preset station has weak reception, the radio will not stop at the preset station.

Using RDS Mode

Your audio system is equipped with Radio Data Systems (RDS). RDS mode gives you many useful new features. When RDS is on, the radio can:

- seek only to stations with the types of programs you want to listen to,
- seek to stations with traffic announcements,
- receive announcements concerning local and national emergencies,
- receive and display messages from radio stations and
- search for a stronger station when a station is too weak for listening.

RDS features are only available for use on FM stations which broadcast RDS information.

RDS SELECT: Press this button to use the alternate RDS functions (RDS, TA, MSG, PTY and < PTY >) located on the six numbered pushbuttons. RDS SELECT will appear on the display. The alternate RDS functions are only available when you are using the FM band of your radio.

RDS (1): With RDS off, press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button to turn RDS on. The RDS display will turn on. You must have RDS on to use the new RDS functions. The RDS display will also turn on if one of the other RDS function buttons has been pressed on. If you are tuned to a station broadcasting RDS information, the station's call letters and Program Type (PTY) will replace the station's frequency on the display. After five seconds, the program type will be replaced on the display by the station's program type name. The program type and program type name may

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

be the same or different. Press BAND to recall the frequency and program type displays. If the radio is tuned to a station that is not broadcasting RDS information, the station's frequency will remain on the display. While RDS is on, the radio will search for a stronger station in the network when a station gets too weak for listening. Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button again to turn RDS off. All RDS functions will be turned off.

REGION: You can also use the RDS button to access the region function. When an RDS station becomes weak, this function searches for a stronger station within the same network. A network can span a great distance. One network can have stations spread across a country or continent. Each network breaks down into regions. With regions, local news items like weather and traffic are available to you. When the region function is on, the radio only searches for stations in the same network and region. You can only use the region function when RDS is already on. Press the RDS SELECT button. Then press and hold the RDS button for two seconds. REGION: ON will appear on the display. While REGION: ON appears on the display, press the RDS button again to turn the region function off. REGION: OFF will appear on the display. The region function can be turned on again by pressing the RDS button.

TA (2): Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button to receive traffic announcements. The radio will turn on the TA display. TP will appear on the display if the tuned station broadcasts traffic announcements. You may also receive traffic announcements from stations in the network related to the tuned station. If the current tuned station does not broadcast traffic announcements, the radio will seek to a station which does. When the radio finds a station which broadcasts traffic announcements, it will stop. If no station is found, NONE FOUND will appear on the display. When SEEK or SCAN is pressed with the traffic announcement function on, the radio will only stop at stations which broadcast traffic announcements.

While a traffic announcement plays, the radio uses a special type of volume called TA volume. To increase TA volume, turn the PWR/VOL knob clockwise. Turn it counterclockwise to decrease volume. TA VOLUME will appear on the display while the volume is being adjusted.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When a traffic announcement comes on the tuned radio station or a related network station, you will hear it, even if the volume is muted or a cassette tape or MiniDisc is playing. If the radio tunes to a related network station for a traffic announcement, it will return to the original station when the announcement is finished. If the cassette tape or MiniDisc player was being used, the tape or MiniDisc will stay in the player and resume play at the point where it stopped.

Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button again to turn TA off.

MSG (3): When RDS is on, if the current station has a message, MSG will appear on the display. Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button to see the message. If the whole message does not appear on the display, parts of the message will appear every three seconds until the message is completed. To see the parts of the message faster than every three seconds, press this button again. A new group of words will appear on the display. Once the complete message has been displayed, MSG will disappear from the display until another new MSG is received.

PTY (4): This button is used to turn on and off Program Type (PTY) seeks and scans. Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button. The PTY display will turn on. RDS SELECT: PTY NEWS will appear on the display for three seconds. (The PTY shown will be the last PTY selected.) Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by this button again to turn the PTY display off.

< PTY > (5) (6): With RDS on, press the RDS SELECT button, followed by < or >. The PTY display will turn on, if it is not already on. RDS SELECT: PTY NEWS will appear on the display for three seconds. (The PTY shown will be the last PTY selected.) While this message is displayed, use < and > to move up and down the PTY list. If you pause on a PTY for three seconds, PRESET PTY: NEWS will appear on the display. While this message is displayed, you can save the PTY in a preset by pressing one of the six numbered pushbuttons until you hear a beep. Allow three seconds for the message to disappear if you do not want to save the PTY in a preset. See “Radio Data Systems (RDS) Program Type (PTY) Selections” in the Index.

When the PTY display is on, press SEEK and SCAN to find radio stations of the PTY you want to listen to. The last PTY selected will be used for seek and scan modes. If a station with the selected PTY is not found, NONE FOUND will appear on the display. If both PTY and TA are on, the radio will search for stations with traffic announcements and the selected PTY.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

PUSHBUTTONS: The six numbered pushbuttons let you return to your favorite Program Types (PTYs). These buttons have factory PTY presets. See “Radio Data Systems (RDS) Program Type (PTY) Selections” in the Index. You can set up to 12 PTYs (six FM1 and six FM2). Just:

1. Turn PTY on.
2. Press BAND to select FM1 or FM2.
3. Tune in an RDS station with the PTY you desire.
4. Press and hold one of the six numbered buttons for more than two seconds until you hear a beep. Whenever you press that numbered button for less than two seconds, the PTY you set will return.
5. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

When battery power is removed and later applied, you will not have to reset your RDS presets because the radio remembers them.

HR or **MN:** Press the RDS SELECT button, followed by one of these buttons to display the time for the current station. STATION TIME IS will be displayed. If a time has not been sent to the radio, NO STATION TIME will be displayed. If you have recently tuned to the station, you may need to wait a minute before the time is available to the radio. To set the clock to the current displayed station time, press and hold HR or MN until TIME UPDATED is displayed. There is a two second delay before the time is updated. RDS mode does not have to be on to use this function, but you must be tuned to an FM RDS station.

ALERT: This type of announcement warns of national or local emergencies. You will not be able to turn off alert announcements. Alert announcements will come on even if RDS mode is turned off. ALERT appears on the display when an alert announcement plays. The radio uses TA volume during these announcements. To increase volume, turn the PWR/VOL knob clockwise. Turn it counterclockwise to decrease volume. TA VOLUME will appear on the display while the volume is being adjusted. When an alert announcement comes on the tuned radio station or a related network station, you will hear it, even if the volume is muted or a cassette tape or MiniDisc is playing. If the radio tunes to a related network station for an alert announcement, it will return to the original station when the announcement is finished. If the cassette tape or MiniDisc player is playing, play will stop for the announcement and resume when the announcement is finished.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting the Tone

TONE: Press and release this button until the desired tone control (BASS, TREBLE or MIDRANGE) is found. The radio keeps separate tone settings for each band, preset (except weather band presets) and source.

LEVEL: After selecting the desired tone control, press the plus (+) or minus (-) symbol on this button to select the desired level.

To save the tone settings for your presets, press and hold the numbered button for the desired preset for more than two seconds until you hear a beep.

Using DSP Mode

DSP: The Digital Signal Processing (DSP) feature is used to provide a choice of four different listening experiences: TALK, FRONT SEAT, AMBIENCE and SPACIOUS. DSP can be used while listening to the radio, the cassette tape player or the remote CD changer. Press this button to turn DSP on. Press and release this button until you reach the desired selection. To turn DSP off, press and hold this button until DSP OFF appears on the display. When DSP OFF is displayed, the system will provide the best overall Bose performance. The radio keeps separate DSP settings for each band (except weather band, which is always set to TALK), preset and source. (This feature is available on the Bose radio only.)

- **TALK:** This setting is used when listening to non-musical material such as news, talk shows, sports broadcasts and books on tape. TALK makes spoken words sound very clear.
- **FRONT SEAT:** This setting adjusts the audio to give the front seat occupants the best possible sound qualities. FRONT SEAT can be used at any time for any material. Rear seat passengers in the vehicle may not get the same effect.
- **AMBIENCE:** This setting is used to enhance the stereo effect.
- **SPACIOUS:** This setting is used to make the listening space seem larger.

Adjusting the Speakers

TONE: Press and release this button until the desired BALANCE or FADE control is found.

SPEAKER: Press and release this button until the desired BALANCE or FADE control is found. This button is not available on the Bose radio.

LEVEL: After selecting the desired BALANCE or FADE control, press the plus (+) or minus (-) symbol on this button to select the desired level.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing a Cassette Tape

With the radio on, insert a cassette tape. The tape will begin playing as soon as it is inserted. When one side of your cassette tape is done playing, auto reverse plays the other side of your cassette tape. Cassette tapes may be loaded with the radio off but they will not start playing until the radio is on. If you want to insert a cassette tape when the ignition is off, first press the eject button.

While the tape is playing, use the VOL, TONE, LEVEL and DSP controls just as you do for the radio. Other controls may have different functions when a tape is inserted. The display will show an underlined tape symbol. TAPE PLAY will appear on the display when a tape is playing, with an arrow to indicate which side of the tape is playing.

If an error occurs while trying to play a cassette tape, it could be that:

- The cassette tape is tight and the cassette player cannot turn the hubs of the tape. Hold the cassette tape with the open end down and try turning the right hub counterclockwise with a pencil. Flip the tape over and repeat. If the hubs do not turn easily, your cassette tape may be damaged and should not be used in the player. Try a new tape to be sure your player is working properly.
- The cassette tape is broken. (Check to see if your tape is broken. Try a new tape.)

RW: Press the left arrow to rewind the tape rapidly. The radio will play while the tape rewinds. You may use your station pushbuttons to tune to another radio station while in RW mode. Press the left arrow again to return to playing speed.

FF: Press the right arrow to fast forward to another part of the tape. The radio will play while the tape advances. You may use your station pushbuttons to tune to another radio station while in FF mode. Press the right arrow again to return to playing speed.

TUNE SEEK: When this button is pressed, it has two positions. This button works the same, whether it is pressed to the first or second position. Press this button to seek to the next or previous selection on the tape. Your tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for TUNE-SEEK to work. The sound will mute while seeking.

SCAN: Press this button to listen to selections for a few seconds. The tape will go to a selection, stop for a few seconds, then go on to the next selection. Press this button again to stop scanning.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SIDE: Press this button to change the side of the tape that is playing.

EJECT: Press the upward triangle button to the right of the cassette tape player to remove a tape. The radio will play. Eject may be activated with the radio off and/or the ignition off.

CLEAN TAPE: If this message appears on the display, the cassette tape player needs to be cleaned. It will still play tapes, but you should clean it as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tapes and player. See “Care of Your Cassette Tape Player” in the Index. After you clean the player, press and hold the eject button for three seconds to reset the CLEAN TAPE indicator. The radio will display CLEAN TAPE MSG CLEARED to show that the indicator was reset.

Your cassette tape player automatically reduces background noise. Dolby Noise Reduction is manufactured under a license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

Auto CrO_2 allows the cassette tape player to adjust to the type of cassette tape for clearer sound for CrO_2 cassette tapes.

COMUNIPORT Multimedia System

This radio has been designed to connect to your internet account to send or receive e-mail or to browse the world wide web. The radio also uses enhanced Radio Data Systems (RDS) to provide you with information such as localized traffic and weather.

Internet Access

Your radio contains a modem that allows you to access e-mail or the World Wide Web using a Personal Digital Assistant (PDA), Hand held PC or Laptop Computer. You will need a modem cable with a 25-pin connector designed for your device. If you have a nine pin serial cable, you will need to supply a null modem with a DB9 to DB25 connector. To access your internet account, you must first configure your computer to work with the radio’s modem.

Palm Pilot Products

If you are using a Palm Pilot product, you will need to obtain an e-mail program and/or a web browser. You can find these products at www.palm.com. Select the *preferences* application in your Palm Pilot Professional or newer product, then select *modem* from the pull down window. In the modem window, select speed at 4800 bps and add the string AT&FX3.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Use the network panel to configure your PDA to work with your Internet Service Provider (ISP). Consult the information provided with your PDA and e-mail/browser applications for details. You may need to contact your ISP for your Domain Name Service (DNS). The e-mail application you choose will require a POP3 and SMTP host, user identification and password. You may need to contact your ISP for the information required to complete the setup.

Palm PC Products

Your Palm PC will allow you to send and receive e-mail. You will need to obtain a browser if you plan to access the world wide web (www). You can find a browser for your Palm PC at www.windowsce.microsoft.com.

If your Palm PC uses Windows CE, create a connection by following these steps:

1. Click on Start.
2. Click on Programs.
3. Click on Communications.
4. Click on Connections.
5. Double click on the Make New Connection icon.
6. Select Dial Up Connection, then Next and Configure.

Under the Port Settings tab, make the following selections:

- Baud rate 4800,
- Data bits 8,
- Parity None,
- Stop Bits 1 and
- Flow Control Hardware.

Next select the Call Options tab and clear the box labeled “Wait for dial tone before dialing” and select OK.

Select the TCP/IP settings to configure your Palm PC to work with your ISP. Consult the documentation provided with your PDA and browser application for details. You may need to contact your ISP for your Domain Name Service (DNS).

To complete the setup follow these steps:

1. Click on Start.
2. Click on Programs.
3. Click on Inbox.

   Then using the menu bar at the top of the screen:

4. Click on Compose.
5. Click on Options and select the Services tab.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The Setup Wizard will guide you through the steps to create an e-mail service. You may need to contact your ISP for the information required to complete the setup.

Receiving and Sending E-Mail

Your radio uses the cellular phone to connect to your ISP. Make sure the phone is secure and connected.

Begin the modem session by connecting the modem cable (or serial cable with a null modem) to your computing device. Press and release the modem door on the radio near the recessed bumps. Connect the cable to the radio's 25-pin connector. Start your e-mail program and connect to the ISP. The radio will receive the phone number from your PDA and instruct the phone to dial the number. While connecting, the audio from your radio will be briefly muted and you will hear the tones being generated as the modem establishes a connection. When the connection is complete, the audio will return. When you end your e-mail session your radio will instruct the phone to hang up.

Cellular Phone Reception

If the reception of the cellular signal weakens the error rate of the modem will increase. If you are having difficulty connecting or sending and receiving data the cellular signal may be too weak. To ensure good signal conditions, the cell phone display should show a minimum of three to four bars for signal strength. The volume on the phone handset should be set to three bars for best results.

Text Based Information Services

Your radio can be used to gather information using enhanced Radio Data Systems (RDS) while you are out of the vehicle. The radio can provide text-based information such as traffic and weather. This is done through a nationwide network of FM stations. You do not need to know which station is providing this service, the radio will search out the station when not being used. Your dealer can provide details on how to obtain this service.

You can program the radio to automatically wake up twice daily, for example, at 7 AM and again at 4:30 PM. If your vehicle is off, the radio will wake up at these programmed times to gather the information. Although the radio is awake and receiving data, it will appear to be off. There will be no sound or display. It may take up to 15 minutes for each update. The information will then be available for review when you enter your vehicle. If the vehicle is on at the time of the scheduled update, the update will not be performed. In addition to the user programmable times, the system will automatically update the information when you turn the ignition off and leave the vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Programming for News/Information Updates

Your vehicle is delivered with the Communiport Infotainment radio programmable updates off. You can program the radio to provide two daily updates.

To program the update times follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the INFO button for approximately two seconds. This will cause the radio to enter the programming mode.
2. Press and release the INFO button, UPDATE 1 TIME will appear on the display. Use the HR and MN buttons to set the time you would like to retrieve the first news and information update.
3. Press and release the INFO button again, UPDATE 2 TIME will appear on the display. Use the HR and MN buttons to set the time to retrieve the second daily news and information update.

The HR button can be used to select OFF if one or both automatic updates are not required.

If you have not started your vehicle in a couple of days the radio will switch to a reduced update schedule by skipping every other update time. After approximately three days the radio will stop providing information updates until you restart your vehicle. This is intended to conserve your vehicle's battery.

Programming for an Immediate Information Update

To program an immediate news update, press and hold the INFO button until UPDATE NOW? PRESS RDM appears on the display. Then press the RDM button while UPDATE NOW? PRESS RDM is being displayed.

The radio will begin the update by switching to the FM band, if not already there, and tuning to the service provider's station. If you are listening to AM, FM or weather, UPDATING INFO.... will appear on the display until the update has completed. You can switch the source to cassette or CD changer or turn the radio off without interrupting the update.

You can also perform the update while listening to the cassette player or CD changer. The radio will briefly display UPDATING INFO...., then return to the normal display. The radio will beep once to let you know when the update has completed.

To cancel the update and return to the station you were listening to, turn the radio off and back on again.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

While performing the information update, the radio will temporarily disable the RDS buttons. The RDS buttons will be enabled again once the update is completed. When the radio begins an update, the information contained in the radio's memory is cleared. If you perform an immediate update and then quickly cancel it, NO TEXT AVAILABLE will appear on the display.

Viewing the News/Information

To view the news/information, press and release the INFO button. The radio will display TOPIC: ALL. The radio will then begin displaying all the received information at a rate of approximately three seconds per display. You can page through the topics at a faster rate by pressing and releasing the INFO button after the text appears.

You can access a topic directly from the TOPIC: ALL display by pressing and releasing the INFO button until the desired topic is displayed. The radio will display the information for that topic only.

If the radio has not received any information, NO TEXT AVAILABLE will appear on the display. This will be followed by the UPDATE NOW? PRESS RDM display previously described.

Vehicle Control

Your radio can provide you with safety and convenience features by performing the following vehicle control actions:

- Unlocking or locking the doors,
- opening the trunk,
- flashing the parking lights and
- sounding the horn.

If you need one of these services, contact the OnStar® service center.

When you turn your vehicle off, the radio will automatically tune to your FM provider's station and check for a vehicle control request received through RDS. Your vehicle control request will be completed in five minutes or less if your vehicle is in the continental United States and in a location that can receive FM broadcasts.

Vehicle control is available for six days from the time you last turned off your vehicle. This time can be increased up to 11 days by turning off the automatic information updates as described previously. This would be useful if you are going to be away from your vehicle for an extended period of time.

For more information see OnStar in the Index.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Radio Data Systems (RDS) Program Type (PTY) Selections

PTY List	Description
Adlt Hit	Adult Hits
Any	Any
Classicl	Classical
Cls Rock	Classical Rock
College	College
Country	Country
Info	Information
Jazz	Jazz
Language	Language
News	News
Nostalga	Nostalgia
Oldies	Oldies
Persnlty	Personality
Public	Public
R & B	Rhythm and Blues
Rel Musc	Religious Music
Rel Talk	Religious Talk
Rock M	Rock Music
Soft	Soft
Soft Rock	Soft Rock
Sports	Sports
Talk	Talk
Top 40	Top 40
Weather	Weather

Factory PTY Presets		
Preset	**FM1**	**FM2**
Preset 1	Adult Hits	Jazz
Preset 2	Classical	Oldies
Preset 3	News	Religious Music
Preset 4	Public	Soft Rock
Preset 5	Rock	R & B
Preset 6	Country	Top 40

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Navigation/Radio System (Option)

Navigation/Radio Display and Controls

The display screen is located in the center of the instrument panel. There are eight “hard” buttons and a touch sensitive screen.

Your vehicle may be equipped with an AM-FM stereo navigation radio system that includes digital sound processing (DSP), a Radio Data System (RDS) with program “type” selections (PTY) that will seek out the kind of music you want to listen to. The radio system can also communicate with your navigation system to broadcast announcements on traffic, weather and emergency alert communications. For information on how to use this system, see “Navigation/Radio System” supplement.

CD Adapter Kits

It is possible to use a portable CD player adapter kit with your cassette tape player after activating the bypass feature on your tape player.

To activate the bypass feature, use the following steps:

1. Turn the ignition to ON or ACC.
2. Turn the radio off.
3. Press and hold the SOURCE button for two seconds. The tape symbol on the display will flash three times, indicating the feature is active.
4. Insert the adapter into the cassette slot.

This override routine will remain active until the eject button is pressed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Console-Mounted CD Changer (Option)

With the compact disc changer, you can play up to six discs continuously. Normal size discs may be played using the slots supplied in the magazine.

You must first load the magazine with discs before you can play a compact disc. Load the CDs from bottom to top, placing a disc in the magazine label side up. If you load a disc label side down, the disc will not play and an error will occur. Repeat this procedure for loading up to six discs in the magazine.

Once you have loaded the discs in the magazine, slide open the door of the compact disc (CD) changer. Push the magazine into the changer in the direction of the arrow marked on top of the magazine.

Close the door by sliding it all the way forward. When the CD magazine is loaded, the changer will begin checking for discs in the magazine. This will continue for up to one minute, depending on the number of discs loaded.

To eject the magazine from the player, slide the CD changer door all the way open, then press the eject button. Remember to keep the door closed whenever possible to keep dirt and dust from getting inside the changer.

Whenever a CD magazine with discs is loaded in the changer, the CD changer symbol will appear on the radio display. If the CD changer is checking the magazine for CDs, the CD symbol will flash on the display until the changer is ready to play. When a CD begins playing, a disc and track number will be displayed. The disc numbers are listed on the front of the magazine.

All of the CD functions are controlled by the radio buttons, except for ejecting the CD magazine.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

PUSHBUTTONS: Press buttons one through six to select compact discs one through six. These pushbuttons represent the order of the discs loaded in the changer.

RW: Press and hold this button to reverse quickly through a track selection.

FF: Press and hold this button to advance quickly through a track selection.

TUNE-SEEK: When this button is pressed, it has two positions. This button works the same, whether it is pressed to the first or second position. Press this button to seek to the next or previous selection on the compact disc.

TRACK SCAN: When you press SCAN for less than two seconds, you will hear the first few seconds of each track on a disc. Press SCAN again to stop TRACK SCAN. The CD will mute while scanning and SCAN will appear on the display.

DISC SCAN: When you press SCAN for more than two seconds, you will hear the first few seconds of the first track on each disc. Press SCAN again to stop DISC SCAN. The CD will mute while scanning and SCAN will appear on the display.

RDM: Press this button to hear the tracks in random, rather than sequential, order. RANDOM will appear on the display. Press TUNE-SEEK while RDM is on the display to randomly seek through discs. Press RDM again to turn off random play.

SIDE: Press this button to select the next disc in the changer. Each time you press this button, DISC LOADING will appear on the display and the disc number on the radio display will go to that of the next available CD.

SOURCE: Press this button to select a source. The audio source must be loaded to play. If none of the audio sources are loaded, NO SOURCE LOADED will appear on the display. Press this button again or press BAND to switch back to the radio.

⏏ **EJECT:** Slide the CD changer door all the way open. Press the upward triangle button. The CD magazine will eject.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Compact Disc Changer Errors

CD CHANGER ERROR could be displayed for the following:

- The road is too rough. The disc should play when the road is smoother.
- The disc is dirty, scratched, wet or loaded label side down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, please contact your dealer.

Radio Personalization with Home and Away Feature (If Equipped)

If DRIVER 1 (HOME or AWAY) PRESETS or DRIVER 2 (HOME or AWAY) PRESETS appears in the display when the radio is first turned on, your vehicle is equipped with this feature.

With this feature, your vehicle will recall the latest radio settings as adjusted the last time your vehicle was operated. This feature allows two different drivers to store and recall their own radio settings. The settings recalled by the radio are determined by which RKE transmitter (“1” or “2”) was used to enter the vehicle. The number on the back of the RKE transmitter corresponds to driver 1 or to driver 2. The radio settings will automatically adjust to where they were last set by the identified driver. The settings can also be recalled by briefly pressing the MEMORY seat buttons 1 or 2 located on the driver’s door.

Your radio can store home and away presets. Home and away presets allow you to use one set of preset radio settings in the area where you live, and another set when you go out of town. That way, you will not need to reprogram your presets every time you travel. With the radio off and the clock displayed, use FF and RW to select home or away presets. To select the away presets, press and hold FF for five counts until you hear a beep. The next time the radio comes on, the away presets will be active. To select the home presets, press and hold RW for five counts until you hear a beep. The next time the radio comes on, the home presets will be active.

When battery power is removed and later applied, you will not have to reset your home radio presets because the radio remembers them. However, you will have to reset your away radio presets.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Theft-Deterrent Feature

THEFTLOCK® is designed to discourage theft of your radio. Your vehicle has a “built-in” theft-deterrent feature on each radio that is automatic -- there is no programming required. The radio in your vehicle cannot be used in any other vehicle. When the radio was originally installed in your vehicle at the factory, it stored the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). Each time the ignition is turned on, the VIN is verified. If the vehicle’s VIN does not match the VIN stored in the radio, THEFTLOCK will be activated and the audio system will not play. If the radio is removed from your vehicle, the original VIN in the radio can be used to trace the radio back to your vehicle.

Audio Steering Wheel Controls

Some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel. They include the following:

VOL: Press the up arrow button to increase volume and the down arrow button to decrease volume.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SEL: When listening to the radio, press the up or down arrow button to tune to the next or previous preset radio station. When listening to a cassette tape, the up or down arrow button can be used to SEEK forward and rearward through the tape. Pressing the up or down arrow button when listening to a CD will cause the player to go to the next or previous selection. When in Radio Data Systems (RDS) Program Type (PTY) mode, the up or down arrow button can be used to perform a PTY preset seek. PSEEK will appear on the display while the PTY preset seek is performed. The radio will seek all of the PTYs stored in presets, except for the PTY Any.

Understanding Radio Reception

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range, however, can cause stations to interfere with each other. AM can pick up noise from things like storms and power lines. Try reducing the treble to reduce this noise if you ever get it.

FM Stereo

FM stereo will give you the best sound, but FM signals will reach only about 10 to 40 miles (16 to 65 km). Tall buildings or hills can interfere with FM signals, causing the sound to come and go.

Weather Band (If Equipped)

Weather band is restricted to speech and the audio quality is not as good as with the AM or FM bands. Depending on location, the radio should receive one or two channels.

Tips About Your Audio System

Hearing damage from loud noise is almost undetectable until it is too late. Your hearing can adapt to higher volumes of sound. Sound that seems normal can be loud and harmful to your hearing. Take precautions by adjusting the volume control on your radio to a safe sound level before your hearing adapts to it.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To help avoid hearing loss or damage:

- Adjust the volume control to the lowest setting.
- Increase volume slowly until you hear comfortably and clearly.

NOTICE:

Before you add any sound equipment to your vehicle -- like a tape player, CB radio, mobile telephone or two-way radio -- be sure you can add what you want. If you can, it's very important to do it properly. Added sound equipment may interfere with the operation of your vehicle's engine, radio or other systems, and even damage them. Your vehicle's systems may also interfere with the operation of sound equipment that has been added improperly.

So, before adding sound equipment, check with your dealer and be sure to check Federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone units.

Care of Your Cassette Tape Player

A tape player that is not cleaned regularly can cause reduced sound quality, ruined cassettes or a damaged mechanism. Cassette tapes should be stored in their cases away from contaminants, direct sunlight and extreme heat. If they aren't, they may not operate properly or may cause failure of the tape player.

Your tape player should be cleaned regularly after every 50 hours of use. Your radio may display CLEAN TAPE to indicate that you have used your tape player for 50 hours without resetting the tape clean timer. If this message appears on the display, your cassette tape player needs to be cleaned. It will still play tapes, but you should clean it as soon as possible to prevent damage to your tapes and player. If you notice a reduction in sound quality, try a known good cassette to see if it is the tape or the tape player at fault. If this other cassette has no improvement in sound quality, clean the tape player.

The recommended cleaning method for your cassette tape player is the use of a scrubbing action, non-abrasive cleaning cassette with pads which scrub the tape head as the hubs of the cleaner cassette turn. The recommended cleaning cassette is available through your dealership (GM Part No. 12344789).

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

When using a scrubbing action, non-abrasive cleaning cassette, it is normal for the cassette to eject because your unit is equipped with a cut tape detection feature and a cleaning cassette may appear as a broken tape. To prevent the cleaning cassette from being ejected, use the following steps.

1. Turn the ignition to ON or ACC.
2. Turn the radio off.
3. Press and hold the SOURCE button for two seconds. The tape symbol on the display will flash three times.
4. Turn the radio on and insert the scrubbing action cleaning cassette.
5. Eject the cleaning cassette after the manufacturer's recommended cleaning time.

When the cleaning cassette has been ejected, the cut tape detection feature is active again.

You may also choose a non-scrubbing action, wet-type cleaner which uses a cassette with a fabric belt to clean the tape head. This type of cleaning cassette will not eject on its own. A non-scrubbing action cleaner may not clean as thoroughly as the scrubbing type cleaner. The use of a non-scrubbing action, dry-type cleaning cassette is not recommended.

After you clean the player, press and hold the eject button for three seconds to reset the CLEAN TAPE indicator. The radio will display CLEAN TAPE MSG CLEARED to show the indicator was reset.

Cassettes are subject to wear and the sound quality may degrade over time. Always make sure the cassette tape is in good condition before you have your tape player serviced.

Care of Your Compact Discs

Handle discs carefully. Store them in their original cases or other protective cases and away from direct sunlight and dust. If the surface of a disc is soiled, dampen a clean, soft cloth in a mild, neutral detergent solution and clean it, wiping from the center to the edge.

Be sure never to touch the signal surface when handling discs. Pick up discs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

Care of Your Compact Disc Player

The use of CD lens cleaner discs is not advised, due to the risk of contaminating the lens of the CD optics with lubricants internal to the CD mechanism.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Diversity Antenna System

Your AM-FM antennas are located in the front windshield and rear window. Be sure that the inside surfaces of the front windshield and rear window are not scratched and that the lines on the glass are not damaged. If the inside surfaces are damaged, they could interfere with radio reception.

NOTICE:

Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear defogger grid and affect your radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs wouldn't be covered by your warranty.

If, when you turn on your rear window defogger, you hear static on your radio station, it could mean that a defogger grid line has been damaged. If this is true, the grid line must be repaired.

If you choose to add an aftermarket cellular telephone to your vehicle, and the antenna needs to be attached to the glass, be sure that you do not damage the grid lines for the AM-FM antennas or place the cellular telephone antenna over the grid lines.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 4 Your Driving and the Road

Here you'll find information about driving on different kinds of roads and in varying weather conditions. We've also included many other useful tips on driving.

4- 2 Defensive Driving
4- 3 Drunken Driving
4- 6 Control of a Vehicle
4- 6 Braking
4- 11 Steering
4- 13 Off-Road Recovery
4- 13 Passing
4- 15 Loss of Control
4- 16 Driving at Night
4- 17 Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads
4- 20 City Driving
4- 21 Freeway Driving
4- 22 Before Leaving on a Long Trip
4- 23 Highway Hypnosis
4- 23 Hill and Mountain Roads
4-25 Winter Driving
4- 29 Recreational Vehicle Towing
4- 29 Loading Your Vehicle
4- 31 Towing a Trailer

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Defensive Driving

The best advice anyone can give about driving is: Drive defensively.

Please start with a very important safety device in your vehicle: Buckle up. (See “Safety Belts” in the Index.)

Defensive driving really means “be ready for anything.” On city streets, rural roads or freeways, it means “always expect the unexpected.”

Assume that pedestrians or other drivers are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do. Be ready for their mistakes.

Rear-end collisions are about the most preventable of accidents. Yet they are common. Allow enough following distance. It’s the best defensive driving maneuver, in both city and rural driving. You never know when the vehicle in front of you is going to brake or turn suddenly.

Defensive driving requires that a driver concentrate on the driving task. Anything that distracts from the driving task -- such as concentrating on a cellular telephone call, reading, or reaching for something on the floor -- makes proper defensive driving more difficult and can even cause a collision, with resulting injury. Ask a passenger to help do things like this, or pull off the road in a safe place to do them yourself. These simple defensive driving techniques could save your life.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Drunken Driving

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a national tragedy. It's the number one contributor to the highway death toll, claiming thousands of victims every year.

Alcohol affects four things that anyone needs to drive a vehicle:

- Judgment
- Muscular Coordination
- Vision
- Attentiveness.

Police records show that almost half of all motor vehicle-related deaths involve alcohol. In most cases, these deaths are the result of someone who was drinking and driving. In recent years, over 17,000 annual motor vehicle-related deaths have been associated with the use of alcohol, with more than 300,000 people injured.

Many adults -- by some estimates, nearly half the adult population -- choose never to drink alcohol, so they never drive after drinking. For persons under 21, it's against the law in every U.S. state to drink alcohol. There are good medical, psychological and developmental reasons for these laws.

The obvious way to solve the leading highway safety problem is for people never to drink alcohol and then drive. But what if people do? How much is "too much" if the driver plans to drive? It's a lot less than many might think. Although it depends on each person and situation, here is some general information on the problem.

The Blood Alcohol Concentration (BAC) of someone who is drinking depends upon four things:

- The amount of alcohol consumed
- The drinker's body weight
- The amount of food that is consumed before and during drinking
- The length of time it has taken the drinker to consume the alcohol.

According to the American Medical Association, a 180-lb. (82 kg) person who drinks three 12-ounce (355 ml) bottles of beer in an hour will end up with a BAC of about 0.06 percent. The person would reach the same BAC by drinking three 4-ounce (120 ml) glasses of wine or three mixed drinks if each had 1-1/2 ounces (45 ml) of a liquor like whiskey, gin or vodka.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

It's the amount of alcohol that counts. For example, if the same person drank three double martinis (3 ounces or 90 ml of liquor each) within an hour, the person's BAC would be close to 0.12 percent. A person who consumes food just before or during drinking will have a somewhat lower BAC level.

There is a gender difference, too. Women generally have a lower relative percentage of body water than men. Since alcohol is carried in body water, this means that a woman generally will reach a higher BAC level than a man of her same body weight when each has the same number of drinks.

The law in many U.S. states sets the legal limit at a BAC of 0.10 percent. In a growing number of U.S. states, and throughout Canada, the limit is 0.08 percent. In some other countries, it's even lower. The BAC limit for all commercial drivers in the United States is 0.04 percent.

The BAC will be over 0.10 percent after three to six drinks (in one hour). Of course, as we've seen, it depends on how much alcohol is in the drinks, and how quickly the person drinks them.

But the ability to drive is affected well below a BAC of 0.10 percent. Research shows that the driving skills of many people are impaired at a BAC approaching 0.05 percent, and that the effects are worse at night. All drivers are impaired at BAC levels above 0.05 percent. Statistics show that the chance of being in a collision increases sharply for drivers who have a BAC of 0.05 percent or above. A driver with a BAC level of 0.06 percent has doubled his or her chance of having a collision. At a BAC level of 0.10 percent, the chance of this driver having a collision is 12 times greater; at a level of 0.15 percent, the chance is 25 times greater!

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The body takes about an hour to rid itself of the alcohol in one drink. No amount of coffee or number of cold showers will speed that up. “I’ll be careful” isn’t the right answer. What if there’s an emergency, a need to take sudden action, as when a child darts into the street? A person with even a moderate BAC might not be able to react quickly enough to avoid the collision.

There’s something else about drinking and driving that many people don’t know. Medical research shows that alcohol in a person’s system can make crash injuries worse, especially injuries to the brain, spinal cord or heart. This means that when anyone who has been drinking -- driver or passenger -- is in a crash, that person’s chance of being killed or permanently disabled is higher than if the person had not been drinking.

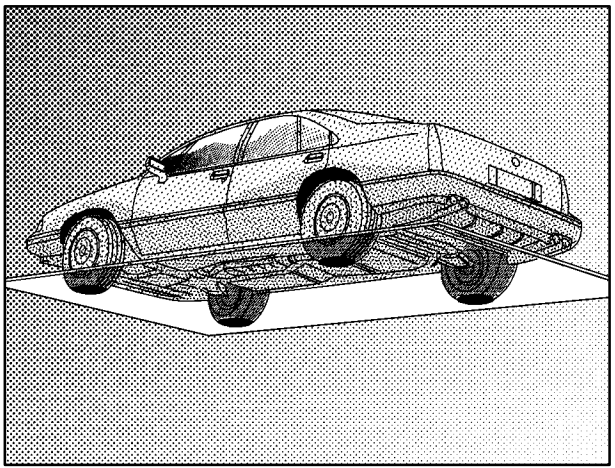
⚠ CAUTION:

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious -- or even fatal -- collision if you drive after drinking. Please don’t drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you’re with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Control of a Vehicle

You have three systems that make your vehicle go where you want it to go. They are the brakes, the steering and the accelerator. All three systems have to do their work at the places where the tires meet the road.



Sometimes, as when you're driving on snow or ice, it's easy to ask more of those control systems than the tires and road can provide. That means you can lose control of your vehicle. (Also see "Traction Control System" in the Index.)

Braking

Braking action involves *perception time* and *reaction time.*

First, you have to decide to push on the brake pedal. That's *perception time.* Then you have to bring up your foot and do it. That's *reaction time.*

Average *reaction time* is about 3/4 of a second. But that's only an average. It might be less with one driver and as long as two or three seconds or more with another. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination and eyesight all play a part. So do alcohol, drugs and frustration. But even in 3/4 of a second, a vehicle moving at 60 mph (100 km/h) travels 66 feet (20 m). That could be a lot of distance in an emergency, so keeping enough space between your vehicle and others is important.

And, of course, actual stopping distances vary greatly with the surface of the road (whether it's pavement or gravel); the condition of the road (wet, dry, icy); tire tread; the condition of your brakes; the weight of the vehicle and the amount of brake force applied.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

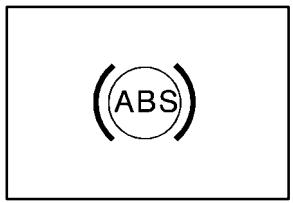
Avoid needless heavy braking. Some people drive in spurts -- heavy acceleration followed by heavy braking -- rather than keeping pace with traffic. This is a mistake. Your brakes may not have time to cool between hard stops. Your brakes will wear out much faster if you do a lot of heavy braking. If you keep pace with the traffic and allow realistic following distances, you will eliminate a lot of unnecessary braking. That means better braking and longer brake life.

If your engine ever stops while you're driving, brake normally but don't pump your brakes. If you do, the pedal may get harder to push down. If your engine stops, you will still have some power brake assist. But you will use it when you brake. Once the power assist is used up, it may take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Anti-Lock Brakes (ABS)

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes (ABS). ABS is an advanced electronic braking system that will help prevent a braking skid.

When you start your engine and begin to drive away, your anti-lock brake system will check itself. You may hear a momentary motor or clicking noise while this test is going on, and you may even notice that your brake pedal moves a little. This is normal.



If there's a problem with the anti-lock brake system, this warning light will stay on. See "Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light" in the Index.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Here’s how anti-lock works. Let’s say the road is wet. You’re driving safely. Suddenly an animal jumps out in front of you.

You slam on the brakes. Here’s what happens with ABS.

A computer senses that wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each front wheel and at both rear wheels.

The anti-lock system can change the brake pressure faster than any driver could. The computer is programmed to make the most of available tire and road conditions.

You can steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As you brake, your computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Remember: Anti-lock doesn't change the time you need to get your foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, you won't have time to apply your brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even though you have anti-lock brakes.

Using Anti-Lock

Don't pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let anti-lock work for you. You may hear the anti-lock pump or motor operate, and feel the brake pedal pulsate, but this is normal.

Braking in Emergencies

With anti-lock, you can steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help you more than even the very best braking.

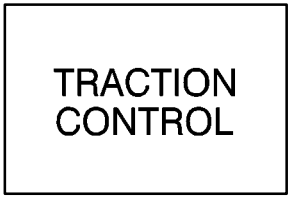
Traction Control System

Your vehicle has a traction control system that limits wheel spin. This is especially useful in slippery road conditions. The system operates only if it senses that one or both of the front wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, the system works the front brakes and reduces engine power to limit wheel spin.

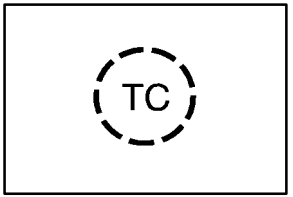
The TRACTION ENGAGED message will display on the Driver Information Center when the traction control system is limiting wheel spin. See "Driver Information Center Messages" in the Index. You may feel or hear the system working, but this is normal.

If your vehicle is in cruise control when the traction control system begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control will automatically disengage. When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, you may reengage the cruise control. (See "Cruise Control" in the Index.)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



United States



Canada

This warning light will come on to let you know if there's a problem with your traction control system.

See "Traction Control System Warning Light" in the Index. When this warning light is on, the system will not limit wheel spin. Adjust your driving accordingly.

The traction control system automatically comes on whenever you start your vehicle. To limit wheel spin, especially in slippery road conditions, you should always leave the system on. But you can turn the traction control system off if you ever need to. (You should turn the system off if your vehicle ever gets stuck in sand, mud, ice or snow. See "Rocking Your Vehicle" in the Index.)

To turn the system off, press the TRAC ON/OFF button located on the center console.

The TRACTION OFF message will display on the Driver Information Center. If the system is limiting wheel spin when you press the button, the TRACTION OFF message will display -- but the system won't turn off right away. It will wait until there's no longer a current need to limit wheel spin.

You can turn the system back on at any time by pressing the button again. The TRACTION READY message should display briefly on the Driver Information Center.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Steering

Power Steering

If you lose power steering assist because the engine stops or the system is not functioning, you can steer but it will take much more effort.

Magnasteer® (If Equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with GM Magnasteer, a system that continuously adjusts the effort you feel when steering at all vehicle speeds. It provides ease when parking yet a firm, solid feel at highway speeds.

Steering Tips

Driving on Curves

It's important to take curves at a reasonable speed.

A lot of the "driver lost control" accidents mentioned on the news happen on curves. Here's why:

Experienced driver or beginner, each of us is subject to the same laws of physics when driving on curves. The traction of the tires against the road surface makes it possible for the vehicle to change its path when you turn the front wheels. If there's no traction, inertia will keep the vehicle going in the same direction. If you've ever tried to steer a vehicle on wet ice, you'll understand this.

The traction you can get in a curve depends on the condition of your tires and the road surface, the angle at which the curve is banked, and your speed. While you're in a curve, speed is the one factor you can control.

Suppose you're steering through a sharp curve. Then you suddenly accelerate. Both control systems -- steering and acceleration -- have to do their work where the tires meet the road. Adding the sudden acceleration can demand too much of those places. You can lose control. Refer to "Traction Control System" in the Index.

What should you do if this ever happens? Ease up on the accelerator pedal, steer the vehicle the way you want it to go, and slow down.

Since your vehicle is equipped with Stabilitrak®, you may see the STABILITY SYS ENGAGED message on the Driver Information Center. See "Stability Sys Engaged Message" in the Index.

Speed limit signs near curves warn that you should adjust your speed. Of course, the posted speeds are based on good weather and road conditions. Under less favorable conditions you'll want to go slower.

If you need to reduce your speed as you approach a curve, do it before you enter the curve, while your front wheels are straight ahead.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

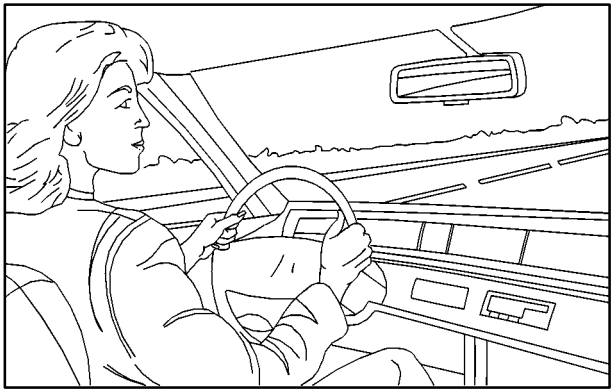
Try to adjust your speed so you can “drive” through the curve. Maintain a reasonable, steady speed. Wait to accelerate until you are out of the curve, and then accelerate gently into the straightaway.

To help you steer in the direction you want to go, during certain sharp or sudden cornering maneuvers, gear selection is controlled. This will maximize the available drive wheel torque and minimize the transaxle response time and shift activity. During this kind of maneuver, the transaxle shifts automatically as vehicle speed changes.

Steering in Emergencies

There are times when steering can be more effective than braking. For example, you come over a hill and find a truck stopped in your lane, or a car suddenly pulls out from nowhere, or a child darts out from between parked cars and stops right in front of you. You can avoid these problems by braking -- if you can stop in time. But sometimes you can’t; there isn’t room. That’s the time for evasive action -- steering around the problem.

Your vehicle can perform very well in emergencies like these. First apply your brakes. (See “Braking in Emergencies” earlier in this section.) It is better to remove as much speed as you can from a possible collision. Then steer around the problem, to the left or right depending on the space available.



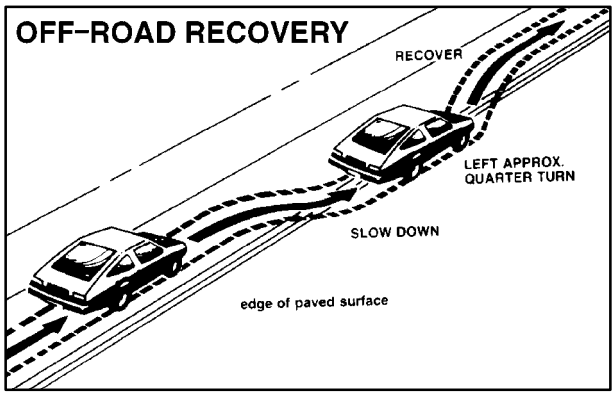
An emergency like this requires close attention and a quick decision. If you are holding the steering wheel at the recommended 9 and 3 o’clock positions, you can turn it a full 180 degrees very quickly without removing either hand. But you have to act fast, steer quickly, and just as quickly straighten the wheel once you have avoided the object.

The fact that such emergency situations are always possible is a good reason to practice defensive driving at all times and wear safety belts properly.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Off-Road Recovery

You may find that your right wheels have dropped off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while you're driving.



If the level of the shoulder is only slightly below the pavement, recovery should be fairly easy. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer so that your vehicle straddles the edge of the pavement. You can turn the steering wheel up to one-quarter turn until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge. Then turn your steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

Passing

The driver of a vehicle about to pass another on a two-lane highway waits for just the right moment, accelerates, moves around the vehicle ahead, then goes back into the right lane again. A simple maneuver?

Not necessarily! Passing another vehicle on a two-lane highway is a potentially dangerous move, since the passing vehicle occupies the same lane as oncoming traffic for several seconds. A miscalculation, an error in judgment, or a brief surrender to frustration or anger can suddenly put the passing driver face to face with the worst of all traffic accidents -- the head-on collision.

So here are some tips for passing:

- "Drive ahead." Look down the road, to the sides and to crossroads for situations that might affect your passing patterns. If you have any doubt whatsoever about making a successful pass, wait for a better time.
- Watch for traffic signs, pavement markings and lines. If you can see a sign up ahead that might indicate a turn or an intersection, delay your pass. A broken center line usually indicates it's all right to pass (providing the road ahead is clear). Never cross a solid line on your side of the lane or a double solid line, even if the road seems empty of approaching traffic.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Do not get too close to the vehicle you want to pass while you're awaiting an opportunity. For one thing, following too closely reduces your area of vision, especially if you're following a larger vehicle. Also, you won't have adequate space if the vehicle ahead suddenly slows or stops. Keep back a reasonable distance.
- When it looks like a chance to pass is coming up, start to accelerate but stay in the right lane and don't get too close. Time your move so you will be increasing speed as the time comes to move into the other lane. If the way is clear to pass, you will have a "running start" that more than makes up for the distance you would lose by dropping back. And if something happens to cause you to cancel your pass, you need only slow down and drop back again and wait for another opportunity.
- If other cars are lined up to pass a slow vehicle, wait your turn. But take care that someone isn't trying to pass you as you pull out to pass the slow vehicle. Remember to glance over your shoulder and check the blind spot.
- Check your mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and start your left lane change signal before moving out of the right lane to pass. When you are far enough ahead of the passed vehicle to see its front in your inside mirror, activate your right lane change signal and move back into the right lane. (Remember that your right outside mirror is convex. The vehicle you just passed may seem to be farther away from you than it really is.)
- Try not to pass more than one vehicle at a time on two-lane roads. Reconsider before passing the next vehicle.
- Don't overtake a slowly moving vehicle too rapidly. Even though the brake lamps are not flashing, it may be slowing down or starting to turn.
- If you're being passed, make it easy for the following driver to get ahead of you. Perhaps you can ease a little to the right.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Loss of Control

Let's review what driving experts say about what happens when the three control systems (brakes, steering and acceleration) don't have enough friction where the tires meet the road to do what the driver has asked.

In any emergency, don't give up. Keep trying to steer and constantly seek an escape route or area of less danger.

Skidding

In a skid, a driver can lose control of the vehicle. Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not "overdriving" those conditions. But skids are always possible.

The three types of skids correspond to your vehicle's three control systems. In the braking skid, your wheels aren't rolling. In the steering or cornering skid, too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force. And in the acceleration skid, too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

A cornering skid is best handled by easing your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Remember: Any traction control system helps avoid only the acceleration skid.

If your traction control system is off, then an acceleration skid is also best handled by easing your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If your vehicle starts to slide, ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and quickly steer the way you want the vehicle to go. If you start steering quickly enough, your vehicle may straighten out. Always be ready for a second skid if it occurs.

With Stabilitrak®, you may see the STABILITY SYS ENGAGED message on the Driver Information Center. See "Stability Sys Engaged Message" in the Index.

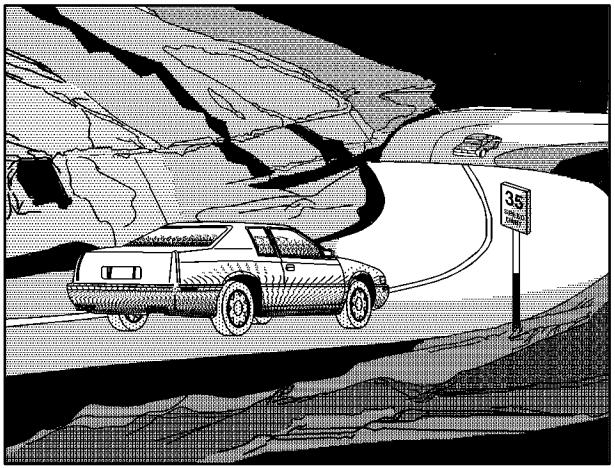
Of course, traction is reduced when water, snow, ice, gravel or other material is on the road. For safety, you'll want to slow down and adjust your driving to these conditions. It is important to slow down on slippery surfaces because stopping distance will be longer and vehicle control more limited.

While driving on a surface with reduced traction, try your best to avoid sudden steering, acceleration or braking (including engine braking by shifting to a lower gear). Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide. You may not realize the surface is slippery until your vehicle is skidding. Learn to recognize warning clues -- such as enough water, ice or packed snow on the road to make a "mirrored surface" -- and slow down when you have any doubt.

Remember: Any anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps avoid only the braking skid.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving at Night



Night driving is more dangerous than day driving. One reason is that some drivers are likely to be impaired -- by alcohol or drugs, with night vision problems, or by fatigue.

Here are some tips on night driving.

- Drive defensively.
- Don't drink and drive.
- Since you can't see as well, you may need to slow down and keep more space between you and other vehicles.
- Slow down, especially on higher speed roads. Your headlamps can light up only so much road ahead.
- In remote areas, watch for animals.
- If you're tired, pull off the road in a safe place and rest.

No one can see as well at night as in the daytime. But as we get older these differences increase. A 50-year-old driver may require at least twice as much light to see the same thing at night as a 20-year-old.

What you do in the daytime can also affect your night vision. For example, if you spend the day in bright sunshine you are wise to wear sunglasses. Your eyes will have less trouble adjusting to night. But if you're driving, don't wear sunglasses at night. They may cut down on glare from headlamps, but they also make a lot of things invisible.

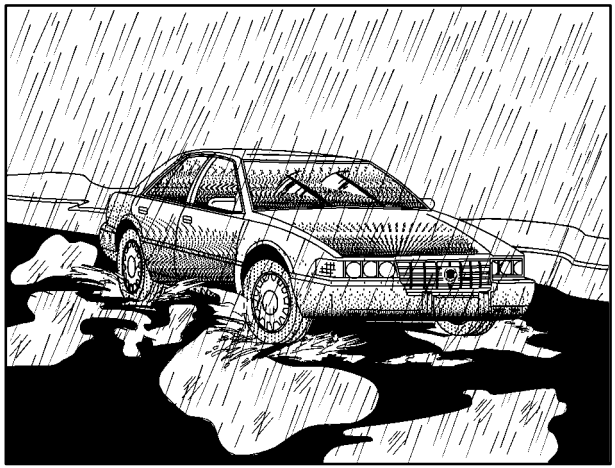
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

You can be temporarily blinded by approaching headlamps. It can take a second or two, or even several seconds, for your eyes to readjust to the dark. When you are faced with severe glare (as from a driver who doesn't lower the high beams, or a vehicle with misaimed headlamps), slow down a little. Avoid staring directly into the approaching headlamps.

Keep your windshield and all the glass on your vehicle clean -- inside and out. Glare at night is made much worse by dirt on the glass. Even the inside of the glass can build up a film caused by dust. Dirty glass makes lights dazzle and flash more than clean glass would, making the pupils of your eyes contract repeatedly.

Remember that your headlamps light up far less of a roadway when you are in a turn or curve. Keep your eyes moving; that way, it's easier to pick out dimly lighted objects. Just as your headlamps should be checked regularly for proper aim, so should your eyes be examined regularly. Some drivers suffer from night blindness -- the inability to see in dim light -- and aren't even aware of it.

Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads

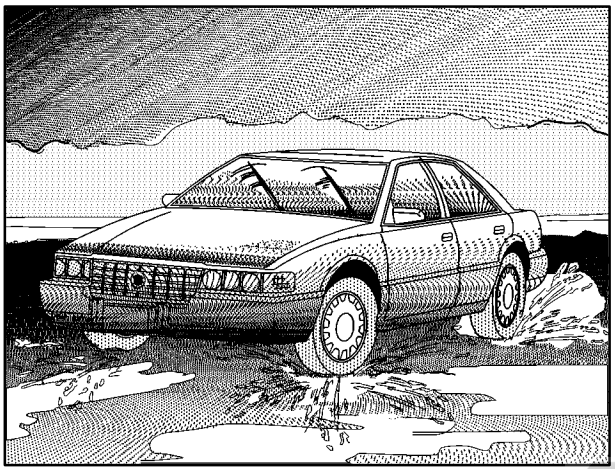


Rain and wet roads can mean driving trouble. On a wet road, you can't stop, accelerate or turn as well because your tire-to-road traction isn't as good as on dry roads. And, if your tires don't have much tread left, you'll get even less traction. It's always wise to go slower and be cautious if rain starts to fall while you are driving. The surface may get wet suddenly when your reflexes are tuned for driving on dry pavement.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The heavier the rain, the harder it is to see. Even if your windshield wiper blades are in good shape, a heavy rain can make it harder to see road signs and traffic signals, pavement markings, the edge of the road and even people walking.

It's wise to keep your windshield wiping equipment in good shape and keep your windshield washer tank filled with washer fluid. Replace your windshield wiper inserts when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield, or when strips of rubber start to separate from the inserts.



Driving too fast through large water puddles or even going through some car washes can cause problems, too. The water may affect your brakes. Try to avoid puddles. But if you can't, try to slow down before you hit them.

⚠ CAUTION:

Wet brakes can cause accidents. They won't work as well in a quick stop and may cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car wash, apply your brake pedal lightly until your brakes work normally.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. So much water can build up under your tires that they can actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you're going fast enough. When your vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Hydroplaning doesn't happen often. But it can if your tires do not have much tread or if the pressure in one or more is low. It can happen if a lot of water is standing on the road. If you can see reflections from trees, telephone poles or other vehicles, and raindrops "dimple" the water's surface, there could be hydroplaning.

Hydroplaning usually happens at higher speeds. There just isn't a hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when it is raining.

Driving Through Deep Standing Water

NOTICE:

If you drive too quickly through deep puddles or standing water, water can come in through your engine's air intake and badly damage your engine. Never drive through water that is slightly lower than the underbody of your vehicle. If you can't avoid deep puddles or standing water, drive through them very slowly.

Driving Through Flowing Water

⚠ CAUTION:

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. If you try to drive through flowing water, as you might at a low water crossing, your vehicle can be carried away. As little as six inches of flowing water can carry away a smaller vehicle. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Don't ignore police warning signs, and otherwise be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

Some Other Rainy Weather Tips

- Besides slowing down, allow some extra following distance. And be especially careful when you pass another vehicle. Allow yourself more clear room ahead, and be prepared to have your view restricted by road spray.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. (See "Tires" in the Index.)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

City Driving

One of the biggest problems with city streets is the amount of traffic on them. You'll want to watch out for what the other drivers are doing and pay attention to traffic signals.

Here are ways to increase your safety in city driving:

- Know the best way to get to where you are going. Get a city map and plan your trip into an unknown part of the city just as you would for a cross-country trip.
- Try to use the freeways that rim and crisscross most large cities. You'll save time and energy. (See the next part, "Freeway Driving.")
- Treat a green light as a warning signal. A traffic light is there because the corner is busy enough to need it. When a light turns green, and just before you start to move, check both ways for vehicles that have not cleared the intersection or may be running the red light.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Freeway Driving

Mile for mile, freeways (also called thruways, parkways, expressways, turnpikes or superhighways) are the safest of all roads. But they have their own special rules.

The most important advice on freeway driving is: Keep up with traffic and keep to the right. Drive at the same speed most of the other drivers are driving. Too-fast or too-slow driving breaks a smooth traffic flow. Treat the left lane on a freeway as a passing lane.

At the entrance, there is usually a ramp that leads to the freeway. If you have a clear view of the freeway as you drive along the entrance ramp, you should begin to check traffic. Try to determine where you expect to blend with the flow. Try to merge into the gap at close to the prevailing speed. Switch on your turn signal, check your mirrors and glance over your shoulder as often as necessary. Try to blend smoothly with the traffic flow.

Once you are on the freeway, adjust your speed to the posted limit or to the prevailing rate if it's slower. Stay in the right lane unless you want to pass.

Before changing lanes, check your mirrors. Then use your turn signal.

Just before you leave the lane, glance quickly over your shoulder to make sure there isn't another vehicle in your "blind" spot.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Once you are moving on the freeway, make certain you allow a reasonable following distance. Expect to move slightly slower at night.

When you want to leave the freeway, move to the proper lane well in advance. If you miss your exit, do not, under any circumstances, stop and back up. Drive on to the next exit.

The exit ramp can be curved, sometimes quite sharply.

The exit speed is usually posted.

Reduce your speed according to your speedometer, not to your sense of motion. After driving for any distance at higher speeds, you may tend to think you are going slower than you actually are.

Before Leaving on a Long Trip

Make sure you're ready. Try to be well rested. If you must start when you're not fresh -- such as after a day's work -- don't plan to make too many miles that first part of the journey. Wear comfortable clothing and shoes you can easily drive in.

Is your vehicle ready for a long trip? If you keep it serviced and maintained, it's ready to go. If it needs service, have it done before starting out. Of course, you'll find experienced and able service experts in Cadillac dealerships all across North America. They'll be ready and willing to help if you need it.

Here are some things you can check before a trip:

- *Windshield Washer Fluid:* Is the reservoir full? Are all windows clean inside and outside?
- *Wiper Blades:* Are they in good shape?
- *Fuel, Engine Oil, Other Fluids:* Have you checked all levels?
- *Lamps:* Are they all working? Are the lenses clean?
- *Tires:* They are vitally important to a safe, trouble-free trip. Is the tread good enough for long-distance driving? Are the tires all inflated to the recommended pressure?
- *Weather Forecasts:* What's the weather outlook along your route? Should you delay your trip a short time to avoid a major storm system?
- *Maps:* Do you have up-to-date maps?

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Highway Hypnosis

Is there actually such a condition as “highway hypnosis”? Or is it just plain falling asleep at the wheel? Call it highway hypnosis, lack of awareness, or whatever.

There is something about an easy stretch of road with the same scenery, along with the hum of the tires on the road, the drone of the engine, and the rush of the wind against the vehicle that can make you sleepy. Don’t let it happen to you! If it does, your vehicle can leave the road in *less than a second*, and you could crash and be injured.

What can you do about highway hypnosis? First, be aware that it can happen.

Then here are some tips:

- Make sure your vehicle is well ventilated, with a comfortably cool interior.
- Keep your eyes moving. Scan the road ahead and to the sides. Check your rearview mirrors and your instruments frequently.
- If you get sleepy, pull off the road into a rest, service or parking area and take a nap, get some exercise, or both. For safety, treat drowsiness on the highway as an emergency.

Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or mountains is different from driving in flat or rolling terrain.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If you drive regularly in steep country, or if you're planning to visit there, here are some tips that can make your trips safer and more enjoyable.

- Keep your vehicle in good shape. Check all fluid levels and also the brakes, tires, cooling system and transaxle. These parts can work hard on mountain roads.
- Know how to go down hills. The most important thing to know is this: let your engine do some of the slowing down. Shift to a lower gear when you go down a steep or long hill.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you don't shift down, your brakes could get so hot that they wouldn't work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Shift down to let your engine assist your brakes on a steep downhill slope.

⚠ CAUTION:

Coasting downhill in NEUTRAL (N) or with the ignition off is dangerous. Your brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down. They could get so hot that they wouldn't work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Always have your engine running and your vehicle in gear when you go downhill.

- Know how to go uphill. You may want to shift down to a lower gear. The lower gears help you climb the hill better.
- Stay in your own lane when driving on two-lane roads in hills or mountains. Don't swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- As you go over the top of a hill, be alert. There could be something in your lane, like a stalled car or an accident.
- You may see highway signs on mountains that warn of special problems. Examples are long grades, passing or no-passing zones, a falling rocks area or winding roads. Be alert to these and take appropriate action.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Winter Driving

Here are some tips for winter driving:

- Have your vehicle in good shape for winter.
- You may want to put winter emergency supplies in your trunk.

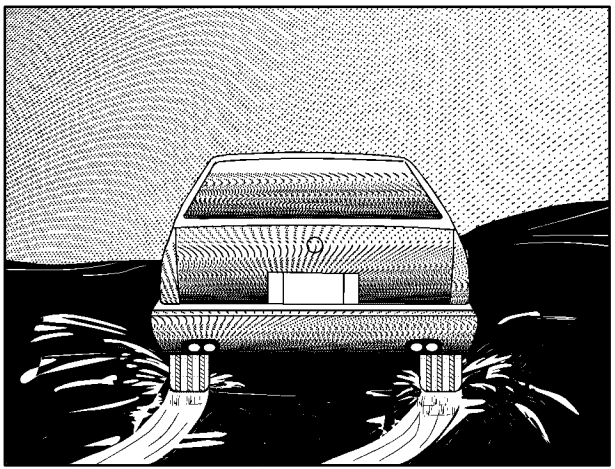
Include an ice scraper, a small brush or broom, a supply of windshield washer fluid, a rag, some winter outer clothing, a small shovel, a flashlight, a red cloth and a couple of reflective warning triangles. And, if you will be driving under severe conditions, include a small bag of sand, a piece of old carpet or a couple of burlap bags to help provide traction. Be sure you properly secure these items in your vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving on Snow or Ice

Most of the time, those places where your tires meet the road probably have good traction.

However, if there is snow or ice between your tires and the road, you can have a very slippery situation. You'll have a lot less traction or "grip" and will need to be very careful.



What's the worst time for this? "Wet ice." Very cold snow or ice can be slick and hard to drive on. But wet ice can be even more trouble because it may offer the least traction of all. You can get wet ice when it's about freezing (32°F; 0°C) and freezing rain begins to fall. Try to avoid driving on wet ice until salt and sand crews can get there.

Whatever the condition -- smooth ice, packed, blowing or loose snow -- drive with caution.

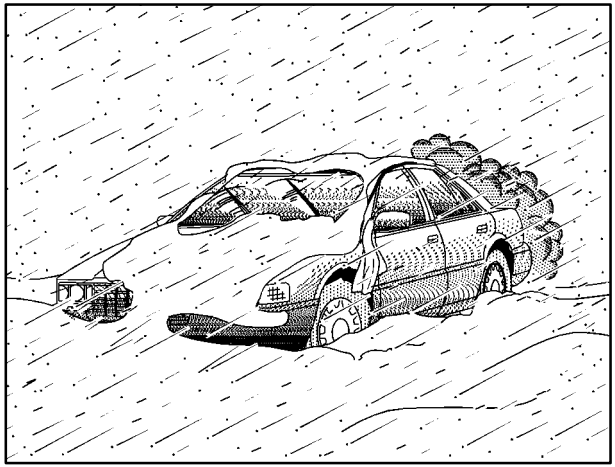
Keep your traction control system on. It improves your ability to accelerate when driving on a slippery road. Even though your vehicle has a traction control system, you'll want to slow down and adjust your driving to the road conditions. See "Traction Control System" in the Index.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Your anti-lock brakes improve your vehicle's stability when you make a hard stop on a slippery road. Even though you have the anti-lock braking system, you'll want to begin stopping sooner than you would on dry pavement. See "Anti-Lock" in the Index.

- Allow greater following distance on any slippery road.
- Watch for slippery spots. The road might be fine until you hit a spot that's covered with ice. On an otherwise clear road, ice patches may appear in shaded areas where the sun can't reach: around clumps of trees, behind buildings or under bridges. Sometimes the surface of a curve or an overpass may remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. If you see a patch of ice ahead of you, brake before you are on it. Try not to brake while you're actually on the ice, and avoid sudden steering maneuvers.

If You're Caught in a Blizzard

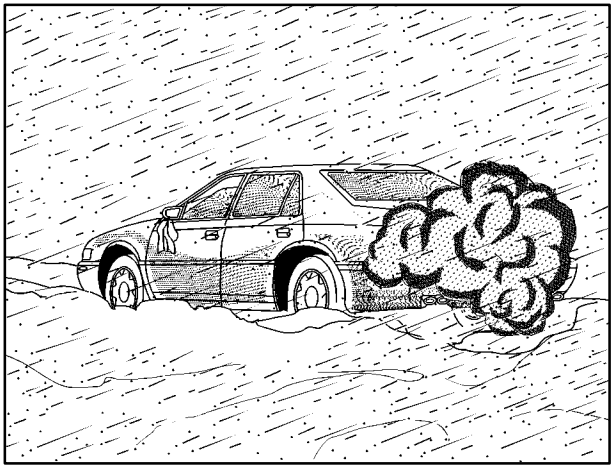


If you are stopped by heavy snow, you could be in a serious situation. You should probably stay with your vehicle unless you know for sure that you are near help and you can hike through the snow. Here are some things to do to summon help and keep yourself and your passengers safe:

- Turn on your hazard flashers.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Tie a red cloth to your vehicle to alert police that you've been stopped by the snow.
- Put on extra clothing or wrap a blanket around you. If you have no blankets or extra clothing, make body insulators from newspapers, burlap bags, rags, floor mats -- anything you can wrap around yourself or tuck under your clothing to keep warm.



You can run the engine to keep warm, but be careful.

⚠ CAUTION:

Snow can trap exhaust gases under your vehicle. This can cause deadly CO (carbon monoxide) gas to get inside. CO could overcome you and kill you. You can't see it or smell it, so you might not know it is in your vehicle. Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking your exhaust pipe. And check around again from time to time to be sure snow doesn't collect there.

Open a window just a little on the side of the vehicle that's away from the wind. This will help keep CO out.

Run your engine only as long as you must. This saves fuel. When you run the engine, make it go a little faster than just idle. That is, push the accelerator slightly. This uses less fuel for the heat that you get and it keeps the battery charged. You will need a well-charged battery to restart the vehicle, and possibly for signaling later on with your headlamps. Let the heater run for a while.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Then, shut the engine off and close the window almost all the way to preserve the heat. Start the engine again and repeat this only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. But do it as little as possible. Preserve the fuel as long as you can. To help keep warm, you can get out of the vehicle and do some fairly vigorous exercises every half hour or so until help comes.

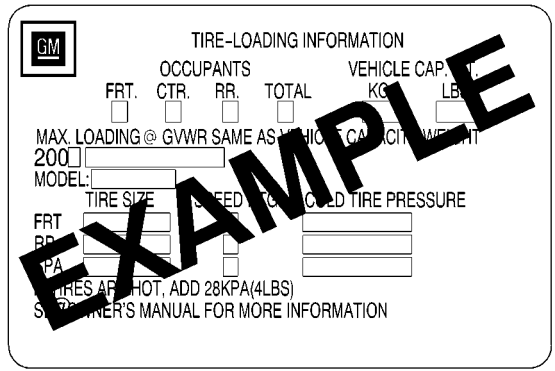
Recreational Vehicle Towing

Your vehicle was not designed to be towed with all four wheels on the ground. If your vehicle must be towed, see “Towing Your Vehicle” in the Index.

NOTICE:

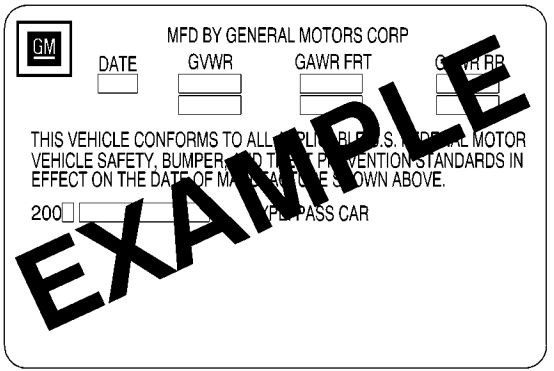
Towing your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground will damage drivetrain components.

Loading Your Vehicle



Two labels on your vehicle show how much weight it may properly carry. The Tire-Loading Information label found on the rear edge of the driver’s door tells you the proper size, speed rating and recommended inflation pressures for the tires on your vehicle. It also gives you important information about the number of people that can be in your vehicle and the total weight that you can carry. This weight is called the Vehicle Capacity Weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo and all options not installed in the factory.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



The other label is the Certification label, found on the rear edge of the driver's door. It tells you the gross weight capacity of your vehicle, called the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel and cargo. Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for either the front or rear axle.

If you do have a heavy load, you should spread it out. Don't carry more than 176 lbs. (80 kg) in your trunk.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR, or either the maximum front or rear GAWR. If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.

NOTICE:

Your warranty does not cover parts or components that fail because of overloading.

If you put things inside your vehicle -- like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else -- they will go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they'll keep going.

⚠ CAUTION:

Things you put inside your vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- **Put things in the trunk of your vehicle. In a trunk, put them as far forward as you can. Try to spread the weight evenly.**
- **Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.**
- **Don't leave an unsecured child restraint in your vehicle.**
- **When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can.**

Electronic Level Control

This feature keeps the rear of your vehicle level as the load changes. It's automatic -- you don't need to adjust anything.

Towing a Trailer

⚠ CAUTION:

If you don't use the correct equipment and drive properly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well -- or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously injured. You may also damage your vehicle; the resulting repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section. Ask your dealer for advice and information about towing a trailer with your vehicle.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if it is equipped with the proper trailer towing equipment. To identify what the vehicle trailering capacity is for your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the Trailer” that appears later in this section. But trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, durability and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

That’s the reason for this part. In it are many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. So please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transaxle, wheel assemblies and tires are forced to work harder against the drag of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater loads, generating extra heat. What’s more, the trailer adds considerably to wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements.

If You Do Decide To Pull A Trailer

If you do, here are some important points:

- There are many different laws, including speed limit restrictions, having to do with trailering. Make sure your rig will be legal, not only where you live but also where you’ll be driving. A good source for this information can be state or provincial police.
- Consider using a sway control if your trailer will weigh 2,000 lbs. (900 kg) or less. You should always use a sway control if your trailer will weigh more than 2,000 lbs. (900 kg). You can ask a hitch dealer about sway controls.
- Don’t tow a trailer at all during the first 1,000 miles (1 600 km) your new vehicle is driven. Your engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.
- Then, during the first 500 miles (800 km) that you tow a trailer, don’t drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and don’t make starts at full throttle. This helps your engine and other parts of your vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.
- Obey speed limit restrictions when towing a trailer. Don’t drive faster than the maximum posted speed for trailers (or no more than 55 mph (90 km/h)) to save wear on your vehicle’s parts.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Three important considerations have to do with weight:

- the weight of the trailer,
- the weight of the trailer tongue
- and the total weight on your vehicle's tires.

Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It should never weigh more than 3,790 lbs. (1 709 kg) total, including the load. But even that can be too heavy.

If you tow more than 1,000 lbs. (450 kg), use trailer brakes. Be sure to follow the instructions that come with the trailer or from the brake manufacturer.

The maximum trailer weight for your vehicle can be determined from the Gross Combined Vehicle Weight (GCVW). The GCVW = curb weight + passenger's weight + cargo weight + trailer weight. The GCVW should never be more than 8,100 lbs. (3 677 kg) total loaded vehicle and trailer.

It depends on how you plan to use your rig. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how much your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. And, it can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.

You can ask your dealer for our trailering information or advice, or you can write us at:

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 436004
Pontiac, MI 48343-6004

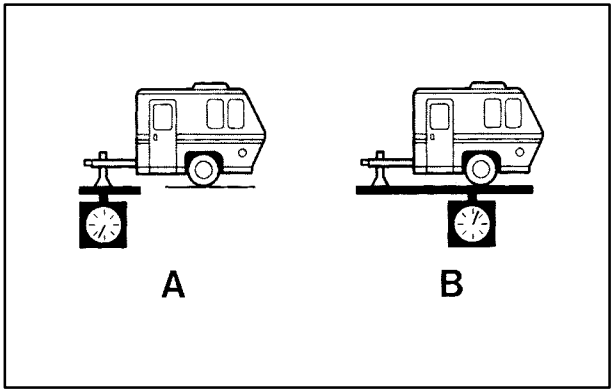
In Canada, write to:

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (A) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total or gross weight of your vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. And if you tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See "Loading Your Vehicle" in the Index for more information about your vehicle's maximum load capacity.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



If you're using a weight-carrying hitch, the trailer tongue (A) should weigh 10 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B). If you have a weight-distributing hitch, the trailer tongue (A) should weigh 12 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B).

After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they aren't, you may be able to get them right simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

Total Weight on Your Vehicle's Tires

Be sure your vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. You'll find these numbers on the Tire-Loading Information label at the rear edge of the driver's door or see "Loading Your Vehicle" in the Index. Then be sure you don't go over the GVW limit for your vehicle, including the weight of the trailer tongue.

Hitches

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch. Here are some rules to follow:

- The rear bumper on your vehicle is not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to it. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- If you'll be pulling a trailer that, when loaded, will weigh more than 2,000 lbs. (900 kg), be sure to use a properly mounted, weight-distributing hitch and sway control of the proper size. This equipment is very important for proper vehicle loading and good handling when you're driving.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Will you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer hitch? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the hitch. If you don't seal them, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle (see "Carbon Monoxide" in the Index). Dirt and water can, too.

Safety Chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains and do not attach them to the bumper. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your rig. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

Because you have anti-lock brakes, don't try to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic brake system. If you do, both brake systems won't work well, or at all. If you tow more than 1,000 lbs. (450 kg), use trailer brakes. Be sure to follow the instructions that come with the trailer or from the brake manufacturer.

Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

Driving with a Trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you'll want to get to know your rig. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly as responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Before you start, check the trailer hitch and platform (and attachments), safety chains, electrical connector, lamps, tires and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lamps and any trailer brakes are still working.

Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because you're a good deal longer, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making Turns

NOTICE:

Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. Your vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle may need a different turn signal flasher and/or extra wiring. Check with your dealer. The arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly hooked up, the trailer lamps will also flash, telling other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes or stop.

When towing a trailer, the arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signal when they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

Driving On Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear *before* you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

On long uphill grades, reduce speed to 45 to 50 mph (70 to 90 km/h) and avoid prolonged use of SECOND (2) gear and engine speeds above 3800 rpm.

Climbing grades steeper than four percent at temperatures above 90°F (32°C) with a loaded vehicle and trailer is not recommended. The cooling system may temporarily overheat. See "Engine Overheating" in the Index.

Parking on Hills

⚠ CAUTION:

You really should not park your vehicle, with a trailer attached, on a hill. If something goes wrong, your rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged.

But if you ever have to park your rig on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Apply your regular brakes, but do not shift into PARK (P).
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the regular brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the regular brakes. Then shift into PARK (P) firmly and apply your parking brake.
5. Release the regular brakes.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When You Are Ready to Leave After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply your regular brakes and hold the pedal down while you:
   - Start your engine;
   - Shift into a gear; and
   - Be sure the parking brake has released.
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance When Trailer Towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you're pulling a trailer. See the Maintenance Schedule booklet for more on this. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transaxle fluid (don't overfill), engine oil, drive belt, cooling system and brake system. If you're trailering, it's a good idea to review this information before you start your trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

Engine Cooling When Trailer Towing

Your cooling system may temporarily overheat during severe operating conditions. See "Engine Overheating" in the Index.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

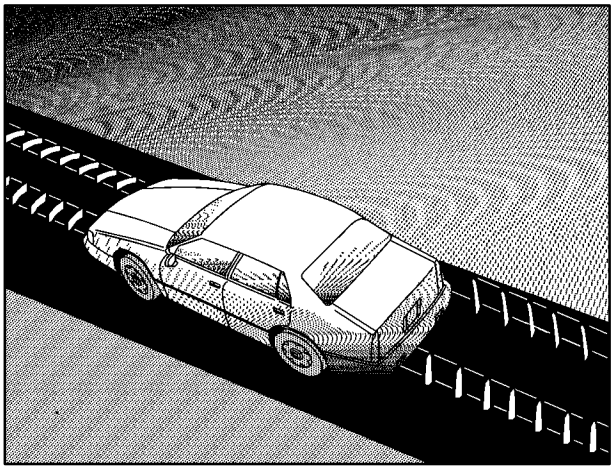
Section 5 Problems on the Road

Here you'll find what to do about some problems that can occur on the road.

5-2 Hazard Warning Flashers
5-3 Other Warning Devices
5-3 Jump Starting
5-8 Towing Your Vehicle
5-9 Engine Overheating
5-12 Cooling System
5-17 If a Tire Goes Flat
5-18 Changing a Flat Tire
5-27 Compact Spare Tire
5-28 If You're Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow

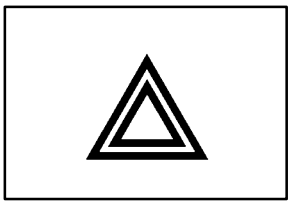
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Hazard Warning Flashers



Your hazard warning flashers let you warn others. They also let police know you have a problem. Your front and rear turn signal lamps will flash on and off.

The hazard warning button is located in the center of the instrument panel, between the two air vents. Press the button in to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off.



This light located on the instrument panel cluster will flash, indicating that the hazard warning flashers are on.

Your hazard warning flashers work no matter what position the key is in, and even if the key isn't in.

Press the button again to turn your hazard warning flashers off. When the hazard warning flashers are on, the turn signals won't work.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Other Warning Devices

If you carry reflective triangles, you can set one up at the side of the road about 300 feet (100 m) behind your vehicle.

Jump Starting

If your battery has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Please follow the steps below to do it safely.

⚠ CAUTION:

Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- **They contain acid that can burn you.**
- **They contain gas that can explode or ignite.**
- **They contain enough electricity to burn you.**

If you don't follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

NOTICE:

Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to your vehicle that wouldn't be covered by your warranty.

The ACDelco® battery in your vehicle has a built-in hydrometer. Do not charge, test or jump start the battery if the hydrometer looks clear or light yellow. Replace the battery when there is a clear or light yellow hydrometer and a cranking complaint.

Trying to start your vehicle by pushing or pulling it won't work, and it could damage your vehicle.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

NOTICE:

If the other system isn't a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged.

2. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles aren't touching each other. If they are, it could cause a ground connection you don't want. You wouldn't be able to start your vehicle and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.
3. To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump starting procedure. Put the transaxle in PARK (P).
4. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the cigarette lighter. Turn off all lamps that aren't needed as well as radios. This will avoid sparks and help save both batteries. In addition, it could save your radio!

NOTICE:

If you leave your radio on, it could be badly damaged. The repairs wouldn't be covered by your warranty.

5. Open the hoods and locate the battery on the other vehicle and the remote positive (+) terminal, located on the passenger's side of the engine, on your vehicle. (You will not see the battery under the hood of your vehicle, since it is located under the rear seat on the passenger's side.) Find the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals on the battery in the other vehicle.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

6. Start by lifting and moving the red positive (+) remote terminal cover away from the relay center.

⚠ CAUTION:

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

Be sure the battery has enough water. You don't need to add water to the ACDelco® battery installed in every new GM vehicle.

But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you don't, explosive gas could be present.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Don't get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

7. Check that the jumper cables don't have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could also be damaged.

   Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) and negative (-) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part. Don't connect positive (+) to negative (-) or you will get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts, too. Also, don't connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal on the dead battery.

⚠ CAUTION:

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

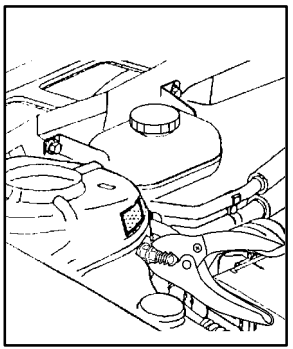
8. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the remote positive (+) terminal of the vehicle with the dead battery.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

9. Don't let the other end of the positive (+) cable touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.

10. Now connect the black negative (-) cable to the good battery's negative (-) terminal.

Don't let the other end of the negative (-) cable touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (-) cable *doesn't* go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part (on your vehicle, you may use the windshield washer bottle stud as shown). Don't allow the red and black handles on the jumper cable to touch each other.



11. Attach the cable at least 18 inches (46 cm) away from the dead battery, but not near engine parts that move.

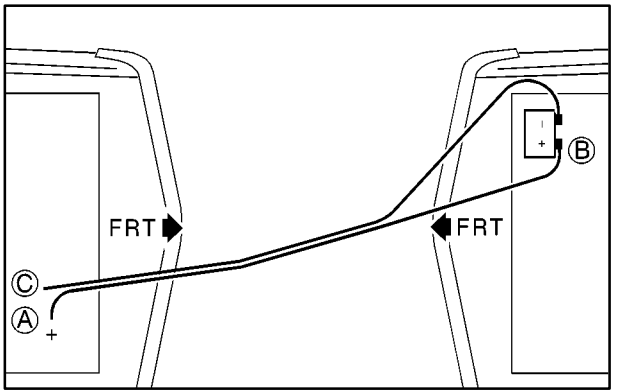
    The electrical connection is just as good there, but the chance of sparks getting back to the battery is much less.

If the SECURITY light flashes, wait until the light stops flashing before starting the engine.

12. Now start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for awhile.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

13. Try to start the vehicle with the dead battery. If it won't start after a few tries, it probably needs service.
14. Remove the cables in reverse order to prevent electrical shorting. Take care that they don't touch each other or any other metal. Replace the red positive (+) remote terminal cover to its original position.



A. Remote Positive (+) Terminal

B. Good Battery

C. Windshield Washer Bottle Stud
(not shown in picture--located on the passenger's side corner of the engine compartment)

Towing Your Vehicle

⚠ CAUTION:

To help avoid serious personal injury to you or others:

- **Never let passengers ride in a vehicle that is being towed.**
- **Never tow faster than safe or posted speeds.**
- **Never tow with damaged parts not fully secured.**
- **Never get under your vehicle after it has been lifted by the tow truck.**
- **Always secure the vehicle on each side with separate safety chains when towing it.**
- **Use only the correct hooks.**

NOTICE:

Use the proper towing equipment to avoid damage to the bumper, fascia or fog lamp areas of the vehicle.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

With current trends in automotive styles and design, it is essential that the correct towing equipment is used to tow a vehicle. Your vehicle can be towed with wheel-lift or car-carrier equipment.

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if you need to have your vehicle towed. See “Roadside Assistance” in the Index.

Engine Overheating

You will find an ENGINE COOLANT HOT, IDLE ENGINE message or an ENGINE OVERHEATED, STOP ENGINE message on the Driver Information Center (DIC). There is also an engine temperature warning light and/or gage on the instrument panel. See “Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light” or “Engine Coolant Temperature Gage” in the Index.

Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode

Should an overheated engine condition exist and the message ENGINE OVERHEATED, STOP ENGINE is displayed, an overheat protection mode which alternates firing groups of cylinders helps prevent engine damage. In this mode, you will notice a loss in power and engine performance. This operating mode allows your vehicle to be driven to a safe place in an emergency; you may drive up to 50 miles (80 km). Towing a trailer in the overheat protection mode should be avoided.

NOTICE:

After driving in the overheated engine protection operating mode, to avoid engine damage, allow the engine to cool before attempting any repair. The engine oil will be severely degraded. Repair the cause of coolant loss, change the oil and reset the oil life indicator. See “Engine Oil” in the Index.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If Steam Is Coming From Your Engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

from it. Just turn it off and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down. Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the hood.

If you keep driving when your engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop your engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool. See “Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode” in the Index.

NOTICE:

If your engine catches fire because you keep driving with no coolant, your vehicle can be badly damaged. The costly repairs would not be covered by your warranty. See “Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode” in the Index.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If No Steam Is Coming From Your Engine

If you get an engine overheat warning but see or hear no steam, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when you:

- Climb a long hill on a hot day.
- Stop after high-speed driving.
- Idle for long periods in traffic.
- Tow a trailer.

If you get the overheat warning with no sign of steam, try this for a minute or so:

1. Dial temperature control to the highest heat setting and open the windows, as necessary.
2. If you're in a traffic jam, shift to NEUTRAL (N); otherwise, shift to the highest gear while driving -- AUTOMATIC OVERDRIVE (Ⓓ) or DRIVE (D).

If you no longer have the overheat warning, you can drive. Just to be safe, drive slower for about 10 minutes. If the warning doesn't come back on, you can drive normally.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park your vehicle right away.

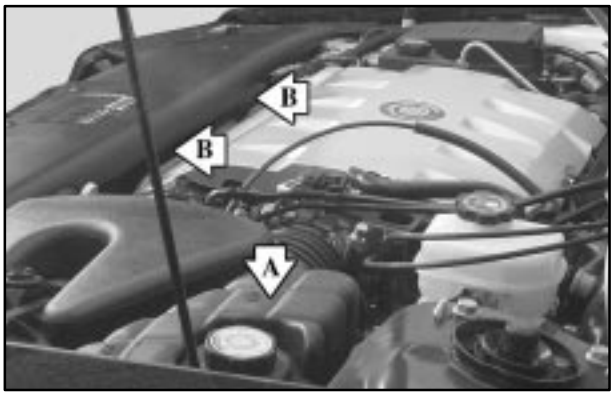
If there's still no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while you're parked. If you still have the warning, *turn off the engine and get everyone out of the vehicle* until it cools down. Also, see "Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode" listed previously in this section.

You may decide not to lift the hood but to get service help right away.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cooling System

When you decide it's safe to lift the hood, here's what you'll see:



A. Coolant Surge Tank with Pressure Cap

B. Electric Engine Cooling Fans

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, don't do anything else until it cools down.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

A low coolant level should be indicated by a CHECK COOLANT LEVEL message on the Driver Information Center. If it is, you may have a leak in the radiator hoses, heater hoses, radiator, water pump or somewhere else in the cooling system.

⚠ CAUTION:

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Don't touch them. If you do, you can be burned.

Don't run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

NOTICE:

Engine damage from running your engine without coolant isn't covered by your warranty. See "Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode" in the Index.

NOTICE:

When adding coolant, it is important that you use only DEX-COOL® (silicate-free) coolant.

If coolant other than DEX-COOL is added to the system, premature engine, heater core or radiator corrosion may result. In addition, the engine coolant will require change sooner -- at 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Damage caused by the use of coolant other than DEX-COOL® is not covered by your new vehicle warranty.

If there seems to be no leak, with the engine on, check to see if the electric engine cooling fans are running. If the engine is overheating, both fans should be running. If they aren't, your vehicle needs service.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank

If you haven't found a problem yet, but the coolant level isn't at or above the fill mark at the forward edge of the surge tank, add a 50/50 mixture of *clean, drinkable water* and DEX-COOL® coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is cool before you do it. (See "Engine Coolant" in the Index for more information.)

⚠ CAUTION:

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. They are under pressure, and if you turn the coolant surge tank pressure cap -- even a little -- they can come out at high speed. Never turn the cap when the

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and coolant surge tank pressure cap to cool if you ever have to turn the pressure cap.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Adding only plain water to your cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid like alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. Your vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, your engine could get too hot but you wouldn't get the overheat warning. Your engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant.

NOTICE:

In cold weather, water can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core and other parts. So use the recommended coolant.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Don't spill coolant on a hot engine.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

1. You can remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot. Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise (left) about one-quarter turn and then stop.

   If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.

2. Then keep turning the pressure cap slowly, and remove it.

3. Then fill the coolant surge tank with the proper mixture, to or above the fill mark at the forward edge of the surge tank.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fans.

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper mixture to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches at or above the fill mark at the forward edge of the surge tank.

5. Then replace the pressure cap. Be sure the pressure cap is hand-tight.

Start the engine and allow it to warm up. If the CHECK COOLANT LEVEL message does not appear on the Driver Information Center, coolant is at the proper fill level. If a CHECK COOLANT LEVEL message does appear, repeat Steps 1 to 3 and reinstall the pressure cap or see your dealer.

If a Tire Goes Flat

It's unusual for a tire to "blow out" while you're driving, especially if you maintain your tires properly. If air goes out of a tire, it's much more likely to leak out slowly. But if you should ever have a "blowout," here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire will create a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop well out of the traffic lane.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction you'd use in a skid. In any rear blowout, remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. Get the vehicle under control by steering the way you want the vehicle to go. It may be very bumpy and noisy, but you can still steer. Gently brake to a stop -- well off the road if possible.

If a tire goes flat, the next part shows how to use your jacking equipment to change a flat tire safely.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing a Flat Tire

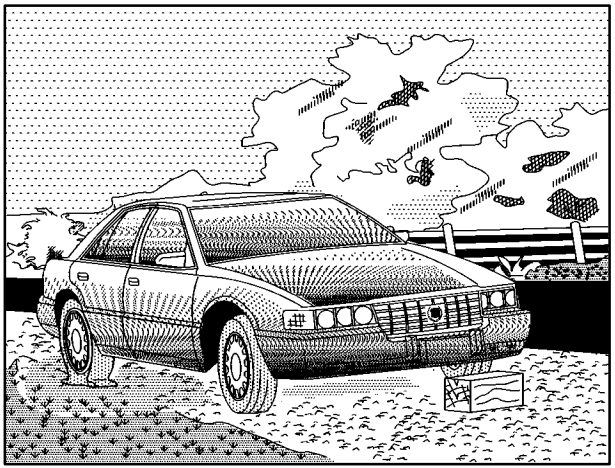
If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on your hazard warning flashers.

⚠ CAUTION:

Changing a tire can cause an injury. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over you or other people. You and they could be badly injured. Find a level place to change your tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

1. **Put the shift lever in PARK (P).**
2. **Set the parking brake firmly.**
3. **Turn off the engine.**

To be even more certain the vehicle won't move, you can put blocks at the front and rear of the tire farthest away from the one being changed. That would be the tire on the other side of the vehicle, at the opposite end.



The following steps will tell you how to use the jack and change a tire.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Removing the Spare Tire and Tools

The equipment you'll need is in the trunk. (Instructions for changing your tires are on the inside of the tire cover.)

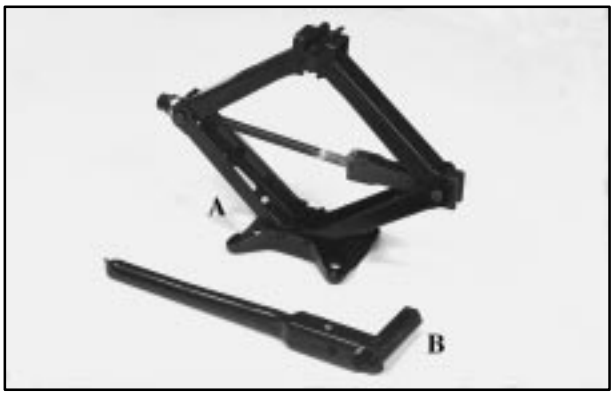
1. Lift the tire cover to gain access to the spare tire and jacking equipment. To do this:

Press the area at the front of the handle so that the back edge raises.

Grab the handle and remove the cover.

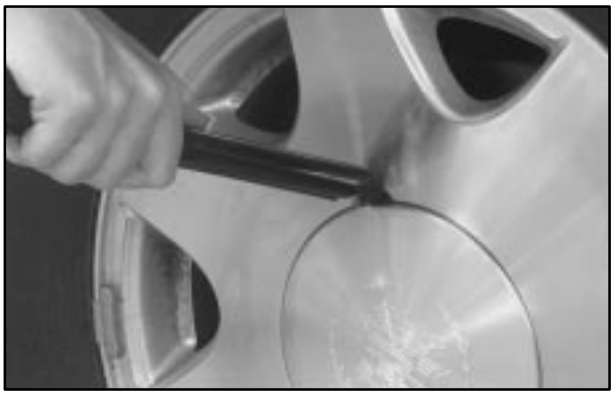
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Unscrew the wing nuts to remove the container that holds the wrench and jack.
3. Remove the wheel wrench, jack and the spare tire from the trunk. See “Compact Spare Tire” later in this section for more information about the compact spare.



The tools you’ll be using include the jack (A) and the wheel wrench (B).

Removing the Wheel Cover



SLS Wheel Shown

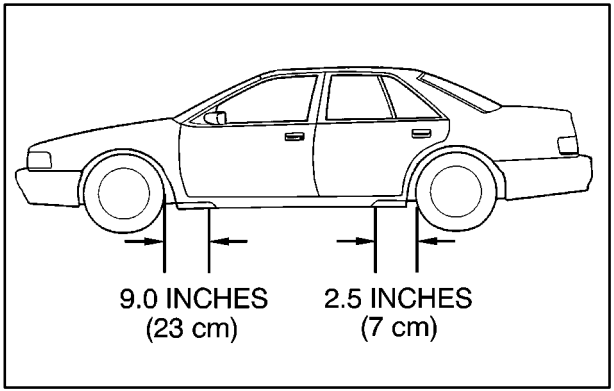
On the SLS, there is a center wheel cover on the aluminum wheel. Using the flat end of the wheel wrench, gently pry the wheel cover off. Be careful not to scratch the aluminum wheel edge and don’t try to remove it with your hands.

On the STS, the wheel nuts and wheel nut covers are exposed. Use the wheel wrench to remove the wheel nut covers.

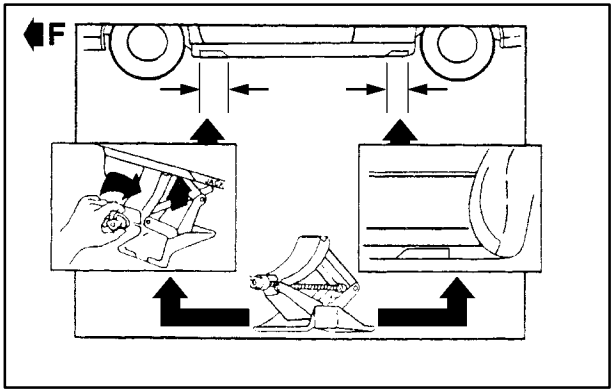
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire

STS Wheel Shown

1. Using the wheel wrench, loosen all the wheel nuts. Don't remove them yet.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



2. Find the jacking location from the diagrams above and corresponding cutouts in the plastic molding.

⚠ CAUTION:

Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

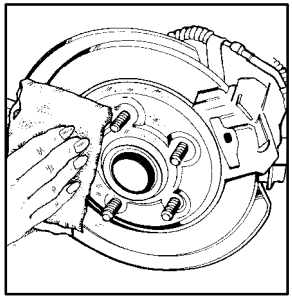
⚠ CAUTION:

Raising your vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Turn the jack handle counterclockwise to lower the jack lift head until the jack fits under the car.
4. Raise the jack until the metal flange fits firmly into the channel of the jack head.
5. Put the compact spare near you.

6. Raise the vehicle by turning the jack handle clockwise. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground for the spare tire to fit under the vehicle.
7. Remove all wheel nuts and take off the flat tire.



8. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.

⚠ CAUTION:

Rust or dirt on the wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make the wheel nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from the places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if you need to, to get all the rust or dirt off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

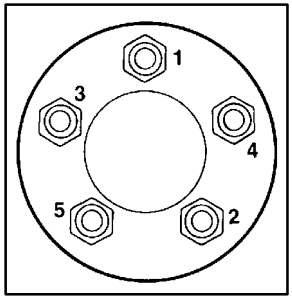
Never use oil or grease on studs or nuts. If you do, the nuts might come loose. Your wheel could fall off, causing a serious accident.

9. Place the spare on the wheel-mounting surface.

10. Replace the wheel nuts with the rounded end of the nuts toward the wheel. Tighten each nut by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.

11. Lower the vehicle by turning the jack handle counterclockwise. Lower the jack completely.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



12. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence as shown.

    On the STS, screw on the wheel nut covers with your fingers, then tighten one-quarter turn with the wheel wrench.

⚠ CAUTION:

Incorrect wheel nuts or improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to become loose and even come off. This could lead to an accident. Be sure to use the correct wheel nuts. If you have to replace them, be sure to get new GM original equipment wheel nuts.

Stop somewhere as soon as you can and have the nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 100 lb-ft (140 N·m).

NOTICE:

Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification.

Don't try to put a wheel cover on your compact spare tire. It won't fit. Store the wheel cover and lug nut caps in the trunk until you have the flat tire repaired or replaced.

NOTICE:

Wheel covers won't fit on your compact spare. If you try to put a wheel cover on your compact spare, you could damage the cover or the spare.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Storing the Flat Tire and Tools

⚠ CAUTION:

Storing a jack, a tire or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

After you've put the compact spare tire on your vehicle, you'll need to store the flat tire in your trunk.

Store the flat tire as far forward in the trunk as possible. Store the jack and wheel wrench in their compartment in the trunk. For storage, the jack must be raised until the screw end is flush with the edge of the jack.

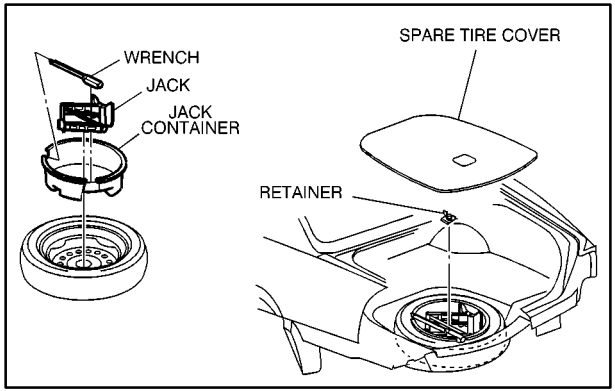
Storing the Spare Tire and Tools

⚠ CAUTION:

Storing a jack, a tire or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

The compact spare is for temporary use only. Replace the compact spare tire with a full-size tire as soon as you can. See the storage instructions label to replace your compact spare into your trunk properly.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



Compact Spare Tire

Although the compact spare tire was fully inflated when your vehicle was new, it can lose air after a time. Check the inflation pressure regularly. It should be 60 psi (420 kPa).

After installing the compact spare on your vehicle, you should stop as soon as possible and make sure your spare tire is correctly inflated. The compact spare is made to perform well at speeds up to 65 mph (105 km/h) for distances up to 3,000 miles (5 000 km), so you can finish your trip and have your full-size tire repaired or replaced where you want. Of course, it's best to replace your spare with a full-size tire as soon as you can. Your spare will last longer and be in good shape in case you need it again.

NOTICE:

When the compact spare is installed, don't take your vehicle through an automatic car wash with guide rails. The compact spare can get caught on the rails. That can damage the tire and wheel, and maybe other parts of your vehicle.

Don't use your compact spare on other vehicles.

And don't mix your compact spare tire or wheel with other wheels or tires. They won't fit. Keep your spare tire and its wheel together.

NOTICE:

Tire chains won't fit your compact spare. Using them can damage your vehicle and can damage the chains too. Don't use tire chains on your compact spare.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If You're Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow

In order to free your vehicle when it is stuck, you will need to spin the wheels, but you don't want to spin your wheels too fast. The method known as "rocking" can help you get out when you're stuck, but you must use caution.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you let your tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. And, the transaxle or other parts of the vehicle can overheat. That could cause an engine compartment fire or other damage. When you're stuck, spin the wheels as little as possible. Don't spin the wheels above 35 mph (55 km/h) as shown on the speedometer.

NOTICE:

Spinning your wheels can destroy parts of your vehicle as well as the tires. If you spin the wheels too fast while shifting your transaxle back and forth, you can destroy your transaxle.

For information about using tire chains on your vehicle, see "Tire Chains" in the Index.

Rocking Your Vehicle To Get It Out

First, turn your steering wheel left and right. That will clear the area around your front wheels. You should turn your traction control system off. (See "Traction Control System" in the Index.) Then shift back and forth between REVERSE (R) and a forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. Release the accelerator pedal while you shift, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transaxle is in gear. By slowly spinning your wheels in the forward and reverse directions, you will cause a rocking motion that may free your vehicle. If that doesn't get you out after a few tries, you may need to be towed out. If you do need to be towed out, see "Towing Your Vehicle" in the Index.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 6 Service and Appearance Care

Here you will find information about the care of your vehicle. This section begins with service and fuel information, and then it shows how to check important fluid and lubricant levels. There is also technical information about your vehicle, and a part devoted to its appearance care.

6- 2 Service
6- 3 Fuel
6- 5 Filling Your Tank
6- 8 Filling a Portable Fuel Container
6- 8 Checking Things Under the Hood
6- 11 Engine Oil
6- 16 Engine Air Cleaner/Filter
6- 19 Automatic Transaxle Fluid
6- 22 Engine Coolant
6- 25 Surge Tank Pressure Cap
6- 26 Power Steering Fluid
6- 27 Windshield Washer Fluid
6- 28 Brakes
6- 32 Battery
6- 34 Bulb Replacement
6- 43 Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement
6- 44 Tires
6- 52 Appearance Care
6- 53 Cleaning the Inside of Your Vehicle
6- 54 Care of Safety Belts
6- 55 Cleaning the Outside of Your Vehicle
6- 57 Cleaning Tires
6- 59 GM Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials
6- 60 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
6- 60 Service Parts Identification Label
6- 61 Electrical System
6- 68 Removing the Rear Seat Cushion
6- 69 Replacement Bulbs
6- 69 Capacities and Specifications
6- 70 Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Service

Your dealer knows your vehicle best and wants you to be happy with it. We hope you'll go to your dealer for all your service needs. You'll get genuine GM parts and GM-trained and supported service people.

We hope you'll want to keep your GM vehicle all GM. Genuine GM parts have one of these marks:

Doing Your Own Service Work

If you want to do some of your own service work, you'll want to use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service your vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see "Service and Owner Publications" in the Index.

Your vehicle has an air bag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see "Servicing Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle" in the Index.

You should keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work you perform. See "Maintenance Record" in the Maintenance Schedule booklet.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be injured and your vehicle could be damaged if you try to do service work on a vehicle without knowing enough about it.

- **Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts and tools before you attempt any vehicle maintenance task.**
- **Be sure to use the proper nuts, bolts and other fasteners. "English" and "metric" fasteners can be easily confused. If you use the wrong fasteners, parts can later break or fall off. You could be hurt.**

Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle

Things you might add to the outside of your vehicle can affect the airflow around it. This may cause wind noise and affect windshield washer performance. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of your vehicle.

Fuel

Use premium unleaded gasoline rated at 91 octane or higher for best performance. You may use middle grade or regular unleaded gasolines, but your vehicle's acceleration may be slightly reduced.

It is recommended that the gasoline meet specifications which have been developed by the American Automobile Manufacturers Association (AAMA) and endorsed by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Manufacturers Association for better vehicle performance and engine protection. Gasolines meeting the AAMA specification could provide improved driveability and emission control system performance compared to other gasolines.

Be sure the posted octane for premium is at least 91 (at least 87 for regular). If the octane is less than 87, you may get a heavy knocking noise when you drive. If it's bad enough, it can damage your engine.

If you're using fuel rated at the recommended octane or higher and you hear heavy knocking, your engine needs service. But don't worry if you hear a little pinging noise when you're accelerating or driving up a hill. That's normal, and you don't have to buy a higher octane fuel to get rid of pinging. It's the heavy, constant knock that means you have a problem.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If your vehicle is certified to meet California Emission Standards (indicated on the underhood emission control label), it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. If such fuels are not available in states adopting California emissions standards, your vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal specifications, but emission control system performance may be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel may turn on and/or your vehicle may fail a smog-check test. (See “Malfunction Indicator Lamp” in the Index.) If this occurs, return to your authorized Cadillac dealer for diagnosis to determine the cause of failure. In the event it is determined that the cause of the condition is the type of fuels used, repairs may not be covered by your warranty.

Some gasolines that are not reformulated for low emissions may contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask your service station operator whether or not the fuel contains MMT. General Motors does not recommend the use of such gasolines. If fuels containing MMT are used, spark plug life may be reduced and your emission control system performance may be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel may turn on. If this occurs, return to your authorized Cadillac dealer for service.

To provide cleaner air, all gasolines in the United States are now required to contain additives that will help prevent deposits from forming in your engine and fuel system, allowing your emission control system to function properly. Therefore, you should not have to add anything to the fuel. In addition, gasolines containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, and reformulated gasolines may be available in your area to contribute to clean air. General Motors recommends that you use these gasolines, particularly if they comply with the specifications described earlier.

NOTICE:

Your vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Don’t use it. It can corrode metal parts in your fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage wouldn’t be covered under your warranty.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuels in Foreign Countries

If you plan on driving in another country outside the United States or Canada, the proper fuel may be hard to find. Never use leaded gasoline or any other fuel not recommended in the previous text on fuel. Costly repairs caused by use of improper fuel wouldn't be covered by your warranty.

To check on fuel availability, ask an auto club, or contact a major oil company that does business in the country where you'll be driving.

You can also write us at the following address for advice. Just tell us where you're going and give your Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

General Motors Overseas Distribution Corporation
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Filling Your Tank

⚠ CAUTION:

Gasoline vapor is highly flammable. It burns violently, and that can cause very bad injuries. Don't smoke if you're near gasoline or refueling your vehicle. Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from gasoline.

The cap is located behind a hinged door on the driver's side of your vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The fuel door release button is located on the left side of the instrument panel below the lamp controls.

To open the fuel door, press the fuel door release button upward. The vehicle must be in PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) and the VALET lockout button must be in the OFF position.

An alternate fuel door release is located inside of the trunk on the driver's side. Pull it to release the fuel door.

While refueling, hang the cap by the tether from the hook on the filler door.

To remove the cap, turn it slowly to the left (counterclockwise). The cap has a spring in it; if you let go of the cap too soon, it will spring back to the right.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

If you get gasoline on yourself and then something ignites it, you could be badly burned. Gasoline can spray out on you if you open the fuel filler cap too quickly. This spray can happen if your tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel filler cap slowly and wait for any "hiss" noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.

Be careful not to spill gasoline. Clean gasoline from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See "Cleaning the Outside of Your Vehicle" in the Index.

When you put the cap back on, turn it to the right (clockwise) until you hear a clicking sound. Make sure you fully install the cap. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. This would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. See "Malfunction Indicator Lamp" in the Index.

The CHECK GAS CAP message in the Driver Information Center will come on if the fuel cap is not properly reinstalled.

NOTICE:

If you need a new cap, be sure to get the right type. Your dealer can get one for you. If you get the wrong type, it may not fit properly. This may cause your malfunction indicator lamp to light and your fuel tank and emissions system may be damaged. See "Malfunction Indicator Lamp" in the Index.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ CAUTION:

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in your vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the gasoline vapor. You can be badly burned and your vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- **Dispense gasoline only into approved containers.**
- **Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed or on any surface other than the ground.**
- **Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.**
- **Don't smoke while pumping gasoline.**

Checking Things Under the Hood

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric fan under the hood can start up and injure you even when the engine is not running. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ CAUTION:

Things that burn can get on hot engine parts and start a fire. These include liquids like gasoline, oil, coolant, brake fluid, windshield washer and other fluids, and plastic or rubber. You or others could be burned. Be careful not to drop or spill things that will burn onto a hot engine.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

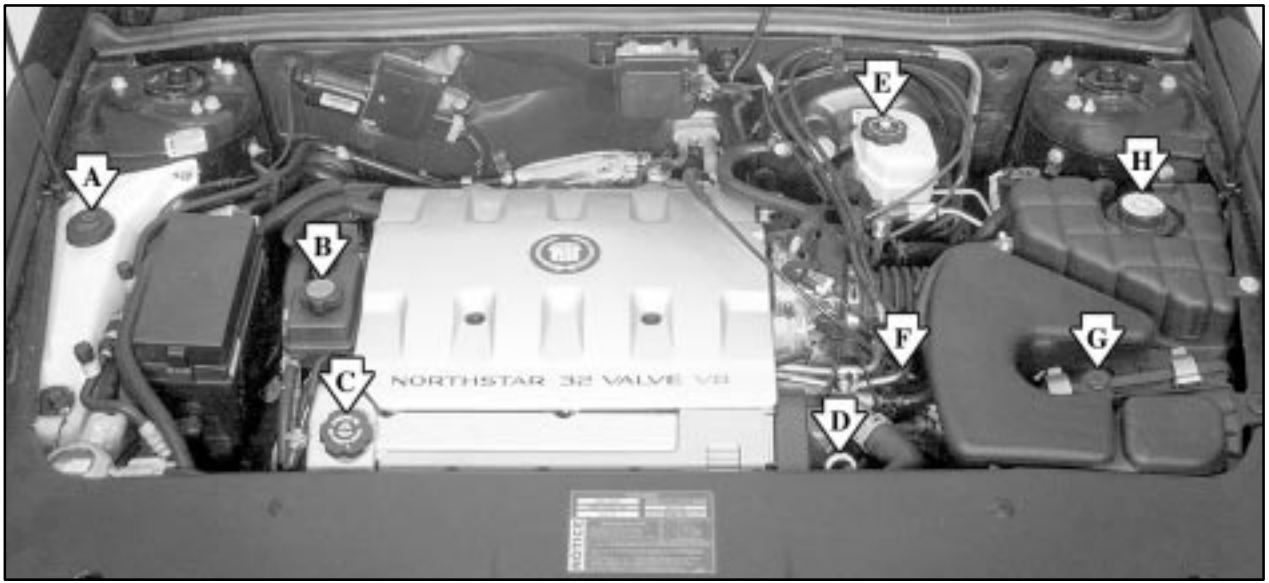
Hood Release

Pull the lever inside the vehicle to open the hood. It is located on the lower left side of the instrument panel.

Then go to the front of the vehicle and find the secondary hood release which is located below the front grille. Move the release lever to the left as you raise the hood.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When you open the hood, you'll see:



A. Windshield Washer Fluid
B. Power Steering Fluid
C. Engine Oil Fill Location
D. Engine Oil Dipstick Location
E. Brake Master Cylinder
F. Transaxle Dipstick/Fill Location
G. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter
H. Surge Tank/Coolant Fill Location

Before closing the hood, be sure all filler caps are on properly. Then pull the hood down and close it firmly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

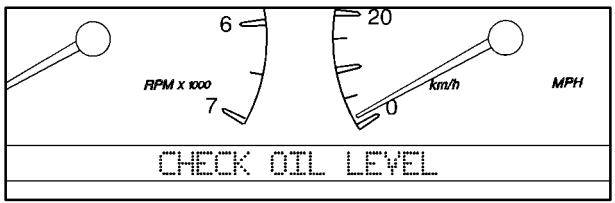
Underhood Lamp

Turn the parking lamps on to operate the underhood lamp. The underhood lamp will come on when the hood is opened.

Engine Oil

If the CHECK OIL LEVEL message appears on the instrument panel, it means you need to check your engine oil level right away. For more information, see “CHECK OIL LEVEL message” in the Index.

You should check your engine oil level regularly; this is an added reminder.



A CHECK OIL LEVEL message will appear when the engine oil is approximately 1 quart (1L) low. If the message is displayed, check the dipstick level and add oil as needed.

Checking Engine Oil

It’s a good idea to check your engine oil every time you get fuel. In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.

The engine oil dipstick is located directly behind the radiator. The yellow handle says ENGINE OIL on it.

Turn off the engine and give the oil several minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If you don’t, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.

Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When to Add Engine Oil

If the oil is at or below the ADD line, then you'll need to add at least one quart of oil. But you must use the right kind. This part explains what kind of oil to use. For crankcase capacity, see "Capacities and Specifications" in the Index.

NOTICE:

Don't add too much oil. If your engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the upper mark that shows the proper operating range, your engine could be damaged.

The engine oil fill cap is located behind the radiator on the passenger's side of the engine. Turn the cap counterclockwise to remove it.

Be sure to fill it enough to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when you're through.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

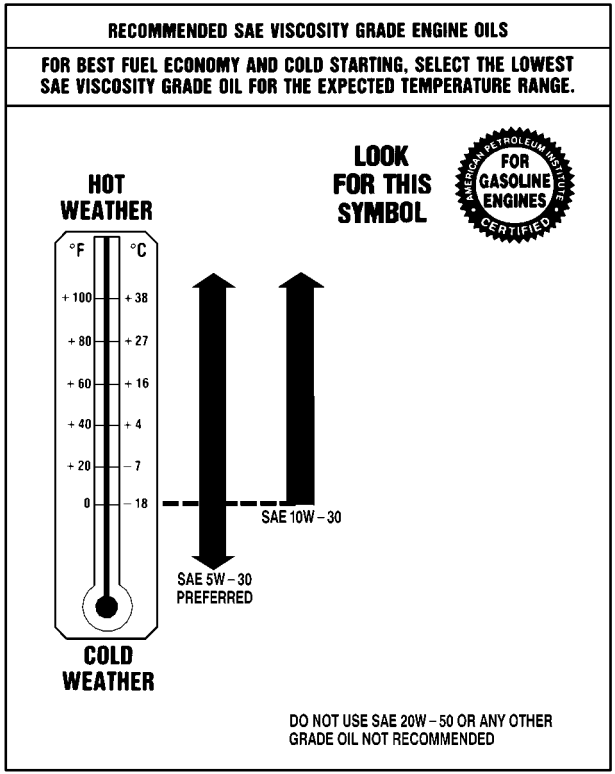
What Kind of Engine Oil to Use

Oils recommended for your vehicle can be identified by looking for the starburst symbol.

This symbol indicates that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API). Do not use any oil which does not carry this starburst symbol.

If you change your own oil, be sure you use oil that has the starburst symbol on the front of the oil container. If you have your oil changed for you, be sure the oil put into your engine is American Petroleum Institute certified for gasoline engines.

You should also use the proper viscosity oil for your vehicle, as shown in the following chart:



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

As shown in the chart, SAE 5W-30 is best for your vehicle. However, you can use SAE 10W-30 if it's going to be 0°F (-18°C) or above. These numbers on an oil container show its viscosity, or thickness. Do not use other viscosity oils, such as SAE 20W-50.

NOTICE:

Use only engine oil with the American Petroleum Institute Certified For Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. Failure to use the recommended oil can result in engine damage not covered by your warranty.

GM Goodwrench® oil meets all the requirements for your vehicle.

If you are in an area where the temperature falls below -20°F (-29°C), consider using either an SAE 5W-30 synthetic oil or an SAE 0W-30 oil. Both will provide easier cold starting and better protection for your engine at extremely low temperatures.

Engine Oil Additives

Don't add anything to your oil. The recommended oils with the starburst symbol are all you will need for good performance and engine protection.

When to Change Engine Oil

Your vehicle has a computer that lets you know when to change your engine oil. This is not based on mileage, but on engine revolutions and engine operating temperature. When the computer has calculated that the oil needs changing, the GM Oil Life System™ will indicate that a change is necessary. The mileage between oil and filter changes will vary depending on how you drive your vehicle -- usually between 3,000 miles (5 000 km) and 10,000 miles (16 000 km) since your last oil and filter change. Under severe conditions, the system may come on before 3,000 miles (5 000 km). Never drive your vehicle more than 10,000 miles (16 000 km) or 12 months (whichever occurs first) without an oil change.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

The system won't detect dust in the oil. So, if you drive in a dusty area, be sure to change your oil and filter every 3,000 miles (5 000 km) or sooner. Remember to reset the Oil Life Indicator whenever the oil is changed.

How to Reset the Oil Life Indicator

After the oil has been changed, display the ENGINE OIL LIFE message by pressing the INFO button. Then press and hold the INFO RESET button until the display shows 100% ENGINE OIL LIFE. This resets the oil life index. The message will remain off until the next oil change is needed. The percentage of oil life remaining may be checked at any time by pressing the INFO button several times until the ENGINE OIL LIFE message appears. For more information on the Oil Life feature, see "Oil Life Indicator" in the Index.

What to Do with Used Oil

Did you know that used engine oil contains certain elements that may be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer? Don't let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly throw away clothing or rags containing used engine oil. (See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.)

Used oil can be a real threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all free-flowing oil from the filter before disposal. Don't ever dispose of oil by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Instead, recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil. If you have a problem properly disposing of your used oil, ask your dealer, a service station or a local recycling center for help.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

The air cleaner is located next to the coolant surge tank on the driver's side of the engine. Be sure the engine has cooled before following these steps to replace the air cleaner filter:

1. With a screwdriver, loosen the air duct clamp, which is located at the mass airflow sensor end of the air duct.

2. Disconnect the air duct from the mass airflow sensor.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Unhook both air cleaner cover latches.
4. Move the air cleaner lid out of the way.
5. Take out the air cleaner filter and remove any loose debris that may be found lying in the air cleaner base.
6. Install a new air filter element. See “Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts” in the Index for the proper type.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Follow these steps to reinstall the air cleaner assembly:

1. Slide the air cleaner lid into the slots in the bottom of the air cleaner base.
2. Close the cover and make sure that both latches are secure and fully engaged.
3. Reinstall the clean air duct over the mass airflow sensor. Make sure that the duct is secure around the entire outer edge of the sensor.
4. Tighten the air duct clamp.

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine when to replace the air filter.

See “Scheduled Maintenance Services” in the Maintenance Schedule booklet.

⚠ CAUTION:

Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air, it stops flame if the engine backfires. If it isn’t there, and the engine backfires, you could be burned. Don’t drive with it off, and be careful working on the engine with the air cleaner/filter off.

NOTICE:

If the air cleaner/filter is off, a backfire can cause a damaging engine fire. And, dirt can easily get into your engine, which will damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when you’re driving.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Transaxle Fluid

When to Check and Change

A good time to check your automatic transaxle fluid level is when the engine oil is changed.

Change both the fluid and filter every 50,000 miles (83 000 km) if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:

- In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.
- In hilly or mountainous terrain.
- When doing frequent trailer towing.
- Uses such as found in taxi, police or delivery service.

If you do not use your vehicle under any of these conditions, the fluid and filter do not require change until the message CHANGE TRANS FLUID appears on the Driver Information Center.

See “Scheduled Maintenance Services” in the Maintenance Schedule booklet.

How to Check

Because this operation can be a little difficult, you may choose to have this done at the dealership service department.

If you do it yourself, be sure to follow all the instructions here, or you could get a false reading on the dipstick.

NOTICE:

Too much or too little fluid can damage your transaxle. Too much can mean that some of the fluid could come out and fall on hot engine parts or exhaust system parts, starting a fire. Be sure to get an accurate reading if you check your transaxle fluid.

Wait at least 30 minutes before checking the transaxle fluid level if you have been driving:

- When outside temperatures are above 90°F (32°C).
- At high speed for quite a while.
- In heavy traffic -- especially in hot weather.
- While pulling a trailer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

To get the right reading, the fluid should be at normal operating temperature, which is 180°F to 200°F (82°C to 93°C).

Get the vehicle warmed up by driving about 15 miles (24 km) when outside temperatures are above 50°F (10°C). If it's colder than 50°F (10°C), you may have to drive longer.

Checking the Fluid Level

Prepare your vehicle as follows:

- Park your vehicle on a level place. Keep the engine running.
- With the parking brake applied, place the shift lever in PARK (P).
- With your foot on the brake pedal, move the shift lever through each gear range, pausing for about three seconds in each range. Then, position the shift lever in PARK (P).
- Let the engine run at idle for three to five minutes.

Then, without shutting off the engine, follow these steps:

The transaxle fluid cap is located next to the radiator hose and below the air cleaner assembly on the driver's side of the engine.

1. Remove the air cleaner assembly so you can reach the transaxle fluid cap.
2. Turn the cap counterclockwise to remove. Pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean rag or paper towel.
3. Push it back in all the way, wait three seconds and then pull it back out again.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Check both sides of the dipstick, and read the lower level. The fluid level must be in the cross-hatched area.
5. If the fluid level is in the acceptable range, push the dipstick back in all the way. Replace the air cleaner/filter assembly.

How to Add Fluid

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of transaxle fluid to use. See “Recommended Fluids and Lubricants” in the Maintenance Schedule booklet.

If the fluid level is low, add only enough of the proper fluid to bring the level into the cross-hatched area on the dipstick.

1. Pull out the dipstick.
2. Using a long-neck funnel, add enough fluid at the dipstick hole to bring it to the proper level.

   It doesn’t take much fluid, generally less than one pint (0.5 L). *Don’t overfill.*

NOTICE:

We recommend you use only fluid labeled DEXRON®-III, because fluid with that label is made especially for your automatic transaxle. Damage caused by fluid other than DEXRON®-III is not covered by your new vehicle warranty.

3. After adding fluid, recheck the fluid level as described under “How to Check.”
4. When the correct fluid level is obtained, push the dipstick back in all the way.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Reset the Transaxle Fluid Change Indicator

After the transaxle fluid has been changed, display the TRANS FLUID LIFE message by pressing the INFO button. Then press and hold the INFO RESET button until the display shows “100.” This resets the transaxle fluid life index. The percentage of transaxle fluid life remaining may be checked at any time by pressing the INFO button several times until the TRANS FLUID LIFE message appears.

Engine Coolant

The cooling system in your vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL® engine coolant. This coolant is designed to remain in your vehicle for 5 years or 150,000 miles (240 000 km), whichever occurs first, if you add only DEX-COOL® extended life coolant.

The following explains your cooling system and how to add coolant when it is low. If you have a problem with engine overheating, see “Engine Overheating” in the Index.

A 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant will:

- Give freezing protection down to -34°F (-37°C).
- Give boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C).
- Protect against rust and corrosion.
- Help keep the proper engine temperature.
- Let the warning lights and gages work as they should.

NOTICE:

When adding coolant, it is important that you use only DEX-COOL® (silicate-free) coolant.

If coolant other than DEX-COOL is added to the system, premature engine, heater core or radiator corrosion may result. In addition, the engine coolant will require change sooner -- at 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Damage caused by the use of coolant other than DEX-COOL® is not covered by your new vehicle warranty.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

What to Use

Use a mixture of one-half *clean, drinkable water* and one-half DEX-COOL® coolant which won't damage aluminum parts. If you use this coolant mixture, you don't need to add anything else.

⚠ CAUTION:

Adding only plain water to your cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid like alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. Your vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, your engine could get too hot but you wouldn't get the overheat warning. Your engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant.

NOTICE:

If you use an improper coolant mixture, your engine could overheat and be badly damaged. The repair cost wouldn't be covered by your warranty. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core and other parts.

If you have to add coolant more than four times a year, have your dealer check your cooling system.

NOTICE:

If you use the proper coolant, you don't have to add extra inhibitors or additives which claim to improve the system. These can be harmful.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Checking Coolant

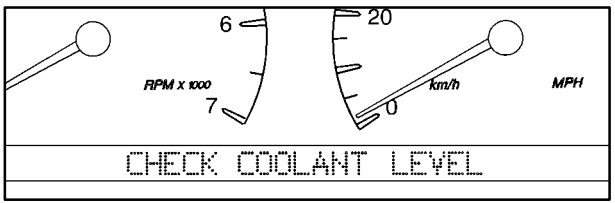
The engine coolant surge tank is located on the driver's side of the engine.

The cooling system is under a lot of pressure when it is hot. If the CHECK COOLANT LEVEL message appears on the Driver Information Center, you will need to add coolant.

⚠ CAUTION:

Turning the surge tank pressure cap when the engine and radiator are hot can allow steam and scalding liquids to blow out and burn you badly. Never turn the surge tank pressure cap -- even a little -- when the engine and radiator are hot.

The vehicle must be on a level surface. When your engine is cold, the coolant level should be at the FULL COLD mark, which is at or above the fill mark at the edge of the surge tank.



If the CHECK COOLANT LEVEL message comes on and stays on, it means you're low on engine coolant.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Adding Coolant

If you need more coolant, add the proper DEX-COOL® coolant mixture *at the surge tank*, but only when the engine is cool.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol, and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Don't spill coolant on a hot engine.

When replacing the pressure cap, make sure it is hand-tight.

Surge Tank Pressure Cap

NOTICE:

The surge tank cap is a 15 psi (105 kPa) pressure-type cap and must be tightly installed to prevent coolant loss and possible engine damage from overheating. Two and one-half turns are required to seal the cap.

If the surge tank pressure cap needs to be replaced, a GM cap is recommended.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Steering Fluid

The power steering fluid reservoir is located next to the fuse relay center on the passenger's side of the engine.

When to Check Power Steering Fluid

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless you suspect there is a leak in the system or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

How to Check Power Steering Fluid

Turn the key off, let the engine compartment cool down, wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean, then unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick with a clean rag. Replace the cap and completely tighten it. Then remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

The level should be at the FULL COLD mark. If necessary, add only enough fluid to bring the level up to the mark.

What to Use

To determine what kind of fluid to use, see "Recommended Fluids and Lubricants" in the Maintenance Schedule booklet. Always use the proper fluid. Failure to use the proper fluid can cause leaks and damage hoses and seals.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Windshield Washer Fluid

What to Use

When you need windshield washer fluid, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If you will be operating your vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

Adding Washer Fluid

When your vehicle's windshield washer fluid level becomes low, a CHECK WASHER FLUID message will appear on the Driver Information Center (DIC). You will need to add fluid soon.

The windshield washer fluid reservoir is located next to the fuse relay center on the passenger's side of the engine.

Open the cap labeled WASHER FLUID. Add washer fluid until the tank is full.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE:

- **When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions for adding water.**
- **Don't mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage your washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system. Also, water doesn't clean as well as washer fluid.**
- **Fill your washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it's very cold. This allows for expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.**
- **Don't use engine coolant (antifreeze) in your windshield washer. It can damage your washer system and paint.**

Brakes

Brake Fluid

Your brake master cylinder reservoir is on the driver's side of the engine compartment. It is filled with DOT-3 brake fluid.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down. The first is that the brake fluid goes down to an acceptable level during normal brake lining wear. When new linings are put in, the fluid level goes back up. The other reason is that fluid is leaking out of the brake system. If it is, you should have your brake system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later your brakes won't work well, or won't work at all.

So, it isn't a good idea to "top off" your brake fluid. Adding brake fluid won't correct a leak. If you add fluid when your linings are worn, then you'll have too much fluid when you get new brake linings. You should add (or remove) brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you have too much brake fluid, it can spill on the engine. The fluid will burn if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and your vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

When your brake fluid falls to a low level, your brake warning light will come on. See "Brake System Warning Light" in the Index.

What to Add

When you do need brake fluid, use only DOT-3 brake fluid. Use new brake fluid from a sealed container only. Refer to "Recommended Fluids and Lubricants" in the Maintenance Schedule booklet.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This will help keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

⚠ CAUTION:

With the wrong kind of fluid in your brake system, your brakes may not work well, or they may not even work at all. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE:

- **Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake system can damage brake system parts so badly that they'll have to be replaced. Don't let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.**
- **If you spill brake fluid on your vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on your vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately. See "Appearance Care" in the Index.**

Brake Wear

Your vehicle has four-wheel disc brakes.

Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound may come and go or be heard all the time your vehicle is moving (except when you are pushing on the brake pedal firmly).

⚠ CAUTION:

The brake wear warning sound means that soon your brakes won't work well. That could lead to an accident. When you hear the brake wear warning sound, have your vehicle serviced.

Your vehicle also has electronic wear sensors that let you know when the brake pads are significantly worn and new pads are needed. The CHANGE BRAKE PADS message will be displayed on the Driver Information Center when the brake pads are worn and need to be replaced. (See "Change Brake Pads Message" in the Index.)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

The CHANGE BRAKE PADS message or the high-pitched warning sound means that soon your brakes won't work well. That could lead to an accident. When the CHANGE BRAKE PADS message comes on and stays on, have your vehicle serviced.

NOTICE:

Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.

Some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with your brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly torque wheel nuts in the proper sequence to GM specifications.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

See "Brake System Inspection" in the Maintenance Schedule booklet under Part C "Periodic Maintenance Inspections."

Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign of brake trouble.

Brake Adjustment

Every time you apply the brakes, with or without the vehicle moving, your brakes adjust for wear.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. Your vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality GM brake parts. When you replace parts of your braking system -- for example, when your brake linings wear down and you have to have new ones put in -- be sure you get new approved GM replacement parts. If you don't, your brakes may no longer work properly. For example, if someone puts in brake linings that are wrong for your vehicle, the balance between your front and rear brakes can change -- for the worse. The braking performance you've come to expect can change in many other ways if someone puts in the wrong replacement brake parts.

Battery

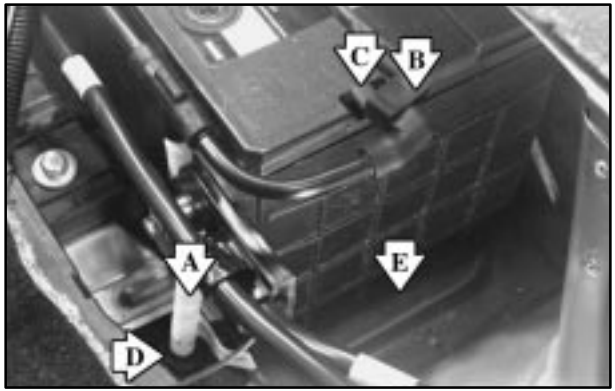
Your new vehicle comes with a maintenance free ACDelco® battery. When it's time for a new battery, get one that has the replacement number shown on the original battery's label. We recommend an ACDelco battery.

The battery is located under the rear seat cushion. To access the battery, see "Removing the Rear Seat Cushion" in the Index. You don't need to access the battery to jump start your vehicle. See "Jump Starting" in the Index.

⚠ CAUTION:

A battery that isn't properly vented can let sulfuric acid fumes into the area under the rear seat cushion. These fumes can damage your rear seat safety belt systems. You may not be able to see this damage, and the safety belts might not provide the protection needed in a crash. If a replacement battery is ever needed, it must be vented in the same manner as the original battery. Always make sure that the vent hose is properly reattached before reinstalling the seat cushion.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



To be sure the vent hose (A) is properly attached, the vent hose connectors (B) must be securely reattached to the vent outlets (C) on each side of the battery, and the vent assembly grommet (D) must be secured to the floor pan (E).

Vehicle Storage

If you're not going to drive your vehicle for 25 days or more, remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery. This will help keep your battery from running down.

⚠ CAUTION:

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you aren't careful. See "Jump Starting" in the Index for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

Contact your dealer to learn how to prepare your vehicle for longer storage periods.

Also, for your audio system, see "Theft-Deterrent Feature" in the Index.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Bulb Replacement

For any bulb changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer service department.

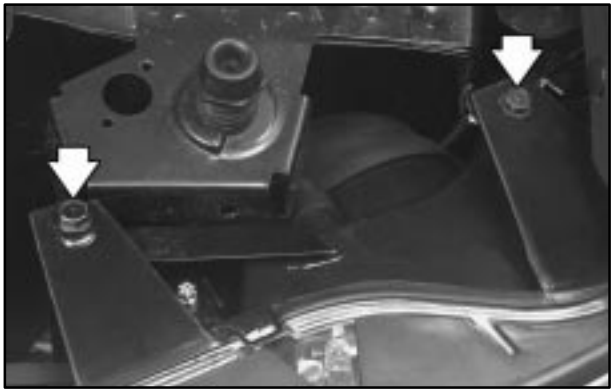
Halogen Bulbs

⚠ CAUTION:

Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

Headlamps

1. Open the hood and remove the upper filler panel by loosening all the screws and then removing the grommets. You can later reinstall the upper filler panel by inserting the grommets, along with the screws, back into the holes.



2. Remove the two bolts fastening the headlamp to the headlamp mounting bracket.
3. Pull the headlamp straight forward to disengage the locator pin at the outboard edge of the headlamp.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

4. To replace the low-beam bulb, first remove the rubber housing cover on the rear of the lamp.

5. Then, turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to unlock the socket from the lamp housing.

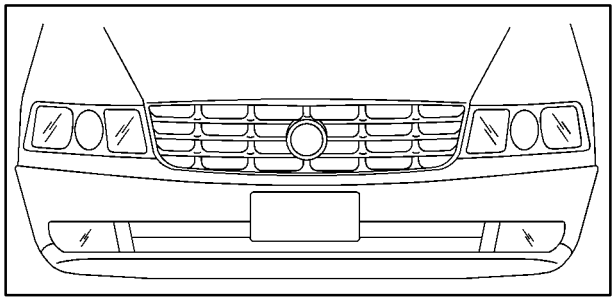
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

6. Remove the headlamp bulb socket.

7. After removing the wiring harness connector from the headlamp bulb socket, replace the bulb assembly. Reconnect it to the wiring harness and reinstall the headlamp bulb assembly back into the headlamp housing.
8. After reinstalling the bulb and socket, reinstall the rubber cover. Make sure it fully covers the headlamp socket.
9. To replace the high-beam bulb, turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to unlock the socket from the lamp housing. Follow the instructions in Step 6 through 8 to install the new bulb.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Headlamp Aiming



Your vehicle has a visual optical headlamp aiming system equipped with horizontal aim indicators. The aim has been pre-set at the factory and should need no further adjustment. This is true even though your horizontal aim indicators may not fall exactly on the “0” (zero) marks on their scales.

If your vehicle is damaged in an accident, the headlamp aim may be affected. Aim adjustment to the low beam may be necessary if it is difficult to see lane markers (for horizontal aim), or if oncoming drivers flash their high beams at you (for vertical aim). If you believe your headlamps need to be re-aimed, we recommend that you take your vehicle to your dealer for service. However, it is possible for you to re-aim your headlamps as described in the following procedure.

NOTICE:

To make sure your headlamps are aimed properly, read all the instructions before beginning. Failure to follow these instructions could cause damage to headlamp parts.

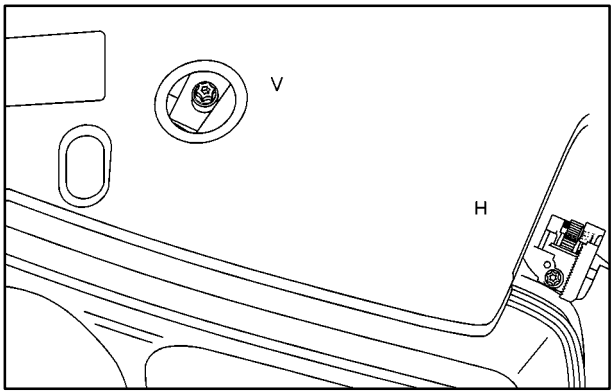
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The vehicle should be properly prepared as follows:

- The vehicle should be placed so the headlamps are 25 ft. (7.6 m) from a light colored wall or other flat surface.
- The vehicle must have all four tires on a perfectly level surface which is level all the way to the wall or other flat surface.
- The vehicle should be placed so it is perpendicular to the wall or other flat surface.
- The vehicle should not have any snow, ice or mud attached to it.
- The vehicle should be fully assembled and all other work stopped while headlamp aiming is being done.
- The vehicle should be normally loaded with a full tank of fuel and one person or 160 lbs. (75 kg) on the driver's seat.
- Tires should be properly inflated.
- Start the vehicle and rock it to level the suspension.

Headlamp aiming is done with the vehicle low beam lamps. The high beam lamps will be correctly aimed if the low beam lamps are aimed properly.

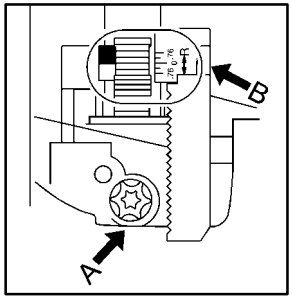
The headlamp aiming devices are under the hood near the headlamps.



If you believe your headlamps need horizontal (left/right) adjustment, follow the horizontal aiming procedure. If you believe your headlamps need only vertical (up/down) adjustment, follow only the vertical aiming procedure.

Adjustment screws can be turned with an E8 Torx® socket or T15 Torx screwdriver.

Headlamp Horizontal Aiming

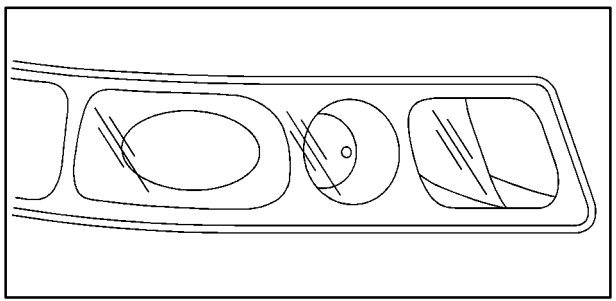


Turn the horizontal aiming screw (A) until the indicator (B) is lined up with zero.

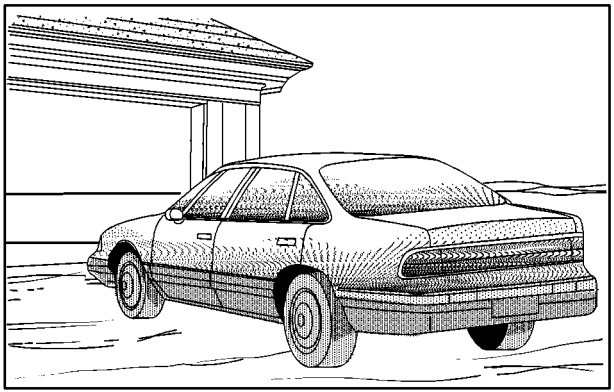
Once the horizontal aim is adjusted, then adjust the vertical aim.

Headlamp Vertical Aiming

1. Find the aim dot on the lens of the lamps.

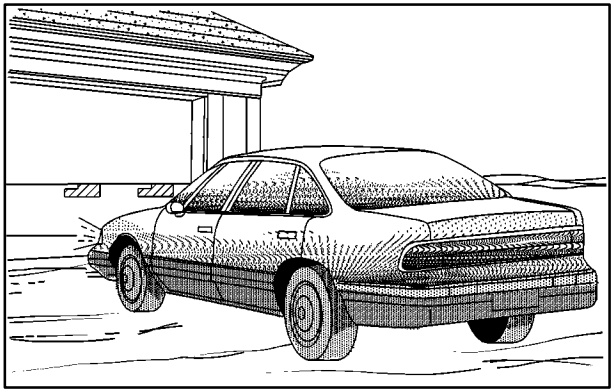


2. Measure the distance from the ground to the aim dot on each lamp. Record this distance.
3. At the wall or other flat surface, measure from the floor to the recorded distance and draw a horizontal line the width of the vehicle.

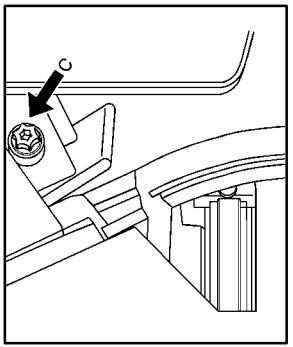


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Turn on the low beam headlamps and cover the lamp not being evaluated. The ambient light should allow the beam cut off to be seen on the wall.



5. Turn the vertical aiming screw (C) until the headlamp beam is aimed to the horizontal line. It is recommended to cover the lamp that is not being evaluated to better see the beam being aimed.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Front Turn Signal Lamps

1. The turn signal lamps are located on the outboard side of the headlamps. To access, remove the headlamp, (see Steps 1, 2 and 3 under “Headlamps”).

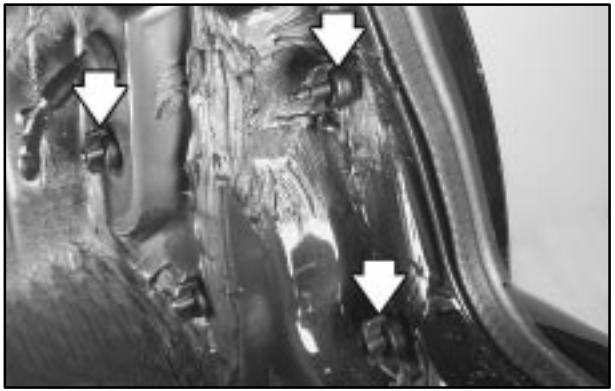
2. Press the bulb socket tab and turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to unlock the socket from the lamp housing.
3. To remove the bulb, grasp the socket firmly and pull the bulb out. Install the new bulb and reverse the steps to replace.

Rear Turn Signal Lamps and Taillamps

1. Open the trunk to gain access to the lamp housing.

2. Remove the rear compartment sill plate by removing the upper convenience net retainers, located at each end, as shown.
3. Move the spare tire cover out of the way.
4. Pull the trunk trim away to access the wing nuts.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



5. Remove the three wing nuts that fasten the taillamp to the body.
6. Gently remove the taillamp from the body. The taillamp is on the bottom of the housing and the rear turn signal lamp is on the upper part of the housing.
7. Press the bulb socket tab and turn the socket counterclockwise to remove it. To remove the bulb, grasp the socket firmly and pull the bulb out.

Once you have replaced the burned-out bulb, reverse the steps to reassemble the lamp assembly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

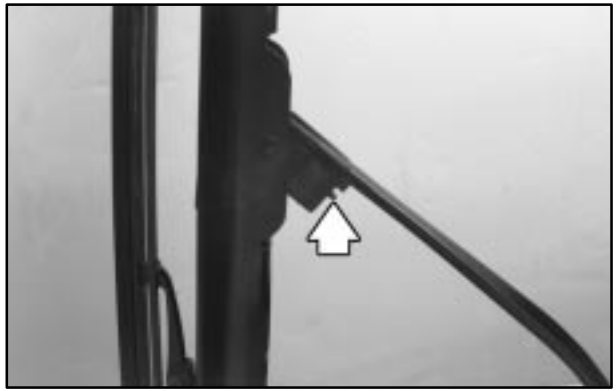
Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement

Windshield wiper blades should be inspected at least twice a year for wear or cracking. See “Wiper Blade Check” in your Maintenance Schedule booklet under Part B “Owner Checks and Services” for more information.

It’s a good idea to clean or replace the wiper blade assembly on a regular basis or when worn. For proper windshield wiper blade length and type, see “Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts” in the Index.

To replace the wiper blade assembly:

1. Lift the wiper up from the windshield and set into the vertically-locked position.



2. Press the tab that holds the wiper blade to the arm.
3. Slide the blade down and off the arm.
4. Slide in the new blade and snap into place.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tires

Your new vehicle comes with high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. If you ever have questions about your tire warranty and where to obtain service, see your Cadillac Warranty booklet for details.

⚠ CAUTION:

Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.

- **Overloading your tires can cause overheating as a result of too much friction. You could have an air-out and a serious accident. See "Loading Your Vehicle" in the Index.**

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

- **Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting accident could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when your tires are cold.**
- **Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured or broken by a sudden impact -- such as when you hit a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.**
- **Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tires have been damaged, replace them.**

See "Inflation -- Tire Pressure" in this section for inflation pressure adjustment for higher speed driving.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Inflation -- Tire Pressure

The Tire-Loading Information label, which is located on the rear edge of the driver's door, shows the correct inflation pressures for your tires when they're cold. "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1 mile (1.6 km).

If you'll be driving at high speeds (e.g., speeds of 100 mph (160 km/h) or higher), where it is legal, set the cold inflation pressure to the maximum inflation pressure shown on the tire sidewall, or to 38 psi (265 kPa), whichever is lower. See the example below. When you end this high-speed driving, return to the cold inflation pressure shown on the Tire-Loading Information label.

Example:

You'll find maximum load and inflation pressure molded on the tire's sidewall, in small letters, near the rim flange. It will read something like this: Maximum load 690 kg (1521 lbs.) @ 300 kPa (44 psi) Max. Press.

For this example, you would set the inflation pressure for high-speed driving at 38 psi (265 kPa).

NOTICE:

Don't let anyone tell you that underinflation or overinflation is all right. It's not. If your tires don't have enough air (underinflation), you can get the following:

- **Too much flexing**
- **Too much heat**
- **Tire overloading**
- **Bad wear**
- **Bad handling**
- **Bad fuel economy.**

If your tires have too much air (overinflation), you can get the following:

- **Unusual wear**
- **Bad handling**
- **Rough ride**
- **Needless damage from road hazards.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

When to Check

Check your tires once a month or more.

Don’t forget your compact spare tire. It should be at 60 psi (420 kPa).

How to Check

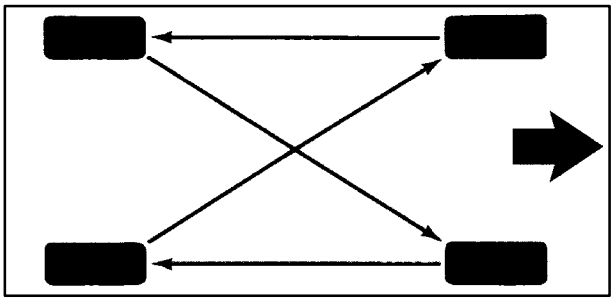
Use a good quality pocket-type gage to check tire pressure. You can’t tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they’re underinflated.

Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

Tire Inspection and Rotation

Tires should be rotated every 6,000 to 8,000 miles (10 000 to 13 000 km). Any time you notice unusual wear, rotate your tires as soon as possible and check wheel alignment. Also check for damaged tires or wheels. See “When It’s Time for New Tires” and “Wheel Replacement” later in this section for more information.

The purpose of regular rotation is to achieve more uniform wear for all tires on the vehicle. The first rotation is the most important. See “Scheduled Maintenance Services” in the Maintenance Schedule booklet for scheduled rotation intervals.



When rotating your tires, always use the correct rotation pattern shown here.

Don’t include the compact spare tire in your tire rotation.

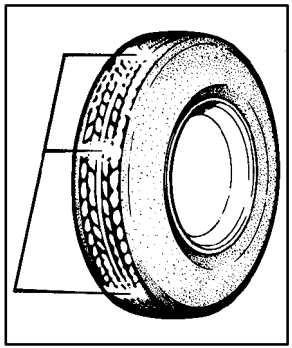
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

After the tires have been rotated, adjust the front and rear inflation pressures as shown on the Tire-Loading Information label. Make certain that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See “Wheel Nut Torque” in the Index.

⚠ CAUTION:

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if you need to, to get all the rust or dirt off. (See “Changing a Flat Tire” in the Index.)

When It’s Time for New Tires



One way to tell when it’s time for new tires is to check the treadwear indicators, which will appear when your tires have only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) or less of tread remaining.

You need a new tire if any of the following statements are true:

- You can see the indicators at three or more places around the tire.
- You can see cord or fabric showing through the tire’s rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut or other damage that can’t be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Buying New Tires

To find out what kind and size of tires you need, look at the Tire-Loading Information label.

The tires installed on your vehicle when it was new had a Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) number on each tire's sidewall. When you get new tires, get ones with that same TPC Spec number. That way your vehicle will continue to have tires that are designed to give proper endurance, handling, speed rating, traction, ride and other things during normal service on your vehicle. If your tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC number will be followed by an "MS" (for mud and snow).

If you ever replace your tires with those not having a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating and construction type (bias, bias-belted or radial) as your original tires.

⚠ CAUTION:

Mixing tires could cause you to lose control while driving. If you mix tires of different sizes or types (radial and bias-belted tires), the vehicle may not handle properly, and you could have a crash. Using tires of different sizes may also cause damage to your vehicle. Be sure to use the same size and type tires on all wheels.

It's all right to drive with your compact spare, though. It was developed for use on your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you use bias-ply tires on your vehicle, the wheel rim flanges could develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly, causing a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on your vehicle.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, which grades tires by treadwear, traction and temperature performance. (This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States.) The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading system does not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to Federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction -- AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance. Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Temperature -- A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance.

Scheduled wheel alignment and wheel balancing are not needed. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset. If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it (except some aluminum wheels, which can sometimes be repaired). See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel you need.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

If you need to replace any of your wheels, wheel bolts or wheel nuts, replace them only with new GM original equipment parts. This way, you will be sure to have the right wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts for your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts or wheel nuts on your vehicle can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of your vehicle, make your tires lose air and make you lose control. You could have a collision in which you or others could be injured. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts for replacement.

NOTICE:

The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.

See “Changing a Flat Tire” in the Index for more information.

Used Replacement Wheels

⚠ CAUTION:

Putting a used wheel on your vehicle is dangerous. You can’t know how it’s been used or how far it’s been driven. It could fail suddenly and cause an accident. If you have to replace a wheel, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Chains

NOTICE:

Use tire chains only where legal and only when you must. Use only SAE Class "S" type chains that are the proper size for your tires. Install them on the front tires and tighten them as tightly as possible with the ends securely fastened. Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.
If you can hear the chains contacting your vehicle, stop and retighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage your vehicle.

Appearance Care

Remember, cleaning products can be hazardous. Some are toxic. Others can burst into flame if you strike a match or get them on a hot part of the vehicle. Some are dangerous if you breathe their fumes in a closed space. When you use anything from a container to clean your vehicle, be sure to follow the manufacturer's warnings and instructions. And always open your doors or windows when you're cleaning the inside.

Never use these to clean your vehicle:

- Gasoline
- Benzene
- Naphtha
- Carbon Tetrachloride
- Acetone
- Paint Thinner
- Turpentine
- Lacquer Thinner
- Nail Polish Remover

They can all be hazardous -- some more than others -- and they can all damage your vehicle, too.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Don’t use any of these unless this manual says you can. In many uses, these will damage your vehicle:

- Alcohol
- Laundry Soap
- Bleach
- Reducing Agents

Cleaning the Inside of Your Vehicle

Use a vacuum cleaner often to get rid of dust and loose dirt. Wipe vinyl, leather, plastic and painted surfaces with a clean, damp cloth.

Cleaning of Fabric/Carpet

Your dealer has two cleaners, Multi-Purpose Interior Cleaner and Capture Non-Solvent Dry Spot and Soil Remover for cleaning fabric and carpet. They will clean normal spots and stains very well. You can get GM-approved cleaning products from your dealer. (See “Appearance Care and Materials” in the Index.)

Here are some cleaning tips:

- Always read the instructions on the cleaner label.
- Clean up stains as soon as you can -- before they set.
- Carefully scrape off any excess stain.
- Use a clean cloth or sponge, and change to a clean area often. A soft brush may be used if stains are stubborn.
- If a ring forms on fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately or it will set.

Cleaning Vinyl

Use warm water and a clean cloth.

- Rub with a clean, damp cloth to remove dirt. You may have to do it more than once.
- Things like tar, asphalt and shoe polish will stain if you don’t get them off quickly. Use a clean cloth and a vinyl/leather cleaner. See your dealer for this product.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning Leather

Use a soft cloth with lukewarm water and a mild soap or saddle soap and wipe dry with a soft cloth. Then, let the leather dry naturally. Do not use heat to dry.

- For stubborn stains, use a leather cleaner. See your dealer for this product.
- *Never* use oils, varnishes, solvent-based or abrasive cleaners, furniture polish or shoe polish on leather.
- Soiled or stained leather should be cleaned immediately. If dirt is allowed to work into the finish, it can harm the leather.

Cleaning the Top of the Instrument Panel

Use only mild soap and water to clean the top surfaces of the instrument panel. Sprays containing silicones or waxes may cause annoying reflections in the windshield and even make it difficult to see through the windshield under certain conditions.

Cleaning Interior Plastic Components

Use only a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth or sponge. Commercial cleaners may affect the surface finish.

Cleaning Wood Panels

Use a clean cloth moistened in warm, soapy water (use mild dish washing soap). Dry the wood immediately with a clean cloth.

Cleaning Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker won't be damaged. Clean spots with just water and mild soap.

Care of Safety Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. If you do, it may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning Glass Surfaces

Glass should be cleaned often. GM Glass Cleaner or a liquid household glass cleaner will remove normal tobacco smoke and dust films on interior glass. (See “Appearance Care and Materials” in the Index.)

Don’t use abrasive cleaners on glass, because they may cause scratches. Avoid placing decals on the inside rear window, since they may have to be scraped off later. If abrasive cleaners are used on the inside of the rear window, an electric defogger element may be damaged. Any temporary license should not be attached across the defogger grid.

Cleaning the Outside of the Windshield and Wiper Blades

If the windshield is not clear after using the windshield washer, or if the wiper blade chatters when running, wax, sap or other material may be on the blade or windshield.

Clean the outside of the windshield with GM Windshield Cleaner, Bon Ami® Powder (non-scratching glass cleaning powder), GM Part No. 1050011. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse it with water.

Grime from the windshield will stick to the wiper blades and affect their performance. Clean the blade by wiping vigorously with a cloth soaked in full-strength windshield washer solvent. Then rinse the blade with water.

Check the wiper blades and clean them as necessary; replace blades that look worn.

Weatherstrips

Silicone grease on weatherstrips will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Apply silicone grease with a clean cloth at least every six months. During very cold, damp weather more frequent application may be required. (See “Recommended Fluids and Lubricants” in the Maintenance Schedule booklet.)

Cleaning the Outside of Your Vehicle

The paint finish on your vehicle provides beauty, depth of color, gloss retention and durability.

Washing Your Vehicle

The best way to preserve your vehicle’s finish is to keep it clean by washing it often with lukewarm or cold water.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Don’t wash your vehicle in the direct rays of the sun. Use a car washing soap. Don’t use strong soaps or chemical detergents. Be sure to rinse the vehicle well, removing all soap residue completely. You can get GM-approved cleaning products from your dealer. (See “Appearance Care and Materials” in the Index.) Don’t use cleaning agents that are petroleum based, or that contain acid or abrasives. All cleaning agents should be flushed promptly and not allowed to dry on the surface, or they could stain. Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

High pressure car washes may cause water to enter your vehicle.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses

Use lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under “Washing Your Vehicle.”

Finish Care

Occasional waxing or mild polishing of your vehicle by hand may be necessary to remove residue from the paint finish. You can get GM-approved cleaning products from your dealer. (See “Appearance Care and Materials” in the Index.)

Your vehicle has a “basecoat/clearcoat” paint finish. The clearcoat gives more depth and gloss to the colored basecoat. Always use waxes and polishes that are non-abrasive and made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish.

NOTICE:

Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may dull the finish or leave swirl marks.

Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage your vehicle’s finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Exterior painted surfaces are subject to aging, weather and chemical fallout that can take their toll over a period of years. You can help to keep the paint finish looking new by keeping your vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels (If Equipped)

Keep your wheels clean using a soft clean cloth with mild soap and water. Rinse with clean water. After rinsing thoroughly, dry with a soft clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

The surface of these wheels is similar to the painted surface of your vehicle. Don't use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, abrasive cleaners, cleaners with acid or abrasive cleaning brushes on them because you could damage the surface. Do not use chrome polish on aluminum wheels.

Use chrome polish only on chrome-plated wheels, but avoid any painted surface of the wheel, and buff off immediately after application.

Don't take your vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicon carbide tire cleaning brushes. These brushes can also damage the surface of these wheels.

Cleaning Tires

To clean your tires, use a stiff brush with a tire cleaner.

NOTICE:

When applying a tire dressing always take care to wipe off any overspray or splash from all painted surfaces on the body or wheels of the vehicle. Petroleum-based products may damage the paint finish and tires.

Sheet Metal Damage

If your vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to the parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the warranty.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired right away. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into a major repair expense.

Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials available from your dealer or other service outlets. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

Underbody Maintenance

Chemicals used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these are not removed, accelerated corrosion (rust) can occur on the underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system even though they have corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Clean any areas where mud and other debris can collect. Dirt packed in closed areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. Your dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this for you.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Some weather and atmospheric conditions can create a chemical fallout. Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted surfaces on your vehicle. This damage can take two forms: blotchy, ringlet-shaped discolorations, and small irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface.

Although no defect in the paint job causes this, Cadillac will repair, at no charge to the owner, the surfaces of new vehicles damaged by this fallout condition within 12 months or 12,000 miles (20 000 km) of purchase, whichever occurs first.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

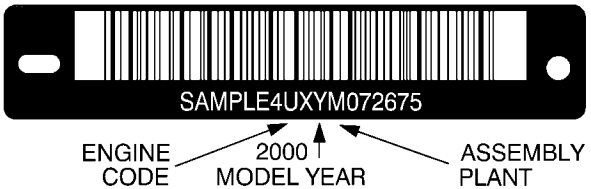
GM Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials

PART NUMBER	SIZE	DESCRIPTION	USAGE
994954	23 in. x 25 in.	Polishing Cloth – Wax Treated	Exterior polishing cloth
1050172	16 oz. (0.473 L)	Tar and Road Oil Remover	Removes tar, road oil and asphalt
1050173	16 oz. (0.473 L)	Chrome Cleaner and Polish	Use on chrome, stainless steel, nickel, copper and brass
1050174	16 oz. (0.473 L)	White Sidewall Tire Cleaner	Removes soil and black marks from whitewalls
1050214	32 oz. (0.946 L)	Vinyl Cleaner	Cleans vinyl tops, upholstery and convertible tops
1050427	23 oz. (0.680 L)	Glass Cleaner	Removes dirt, grime, smoke and fingerprints
1052918**	8 oz. (0.237 L)	Armor All™ Protectant	Protects leather, wood, acrylics, Plexiglas™, plastic, rubber and vinyl
1052925	16 oz. (0.473 L)	Multi-Purpose Interior Cleaner	Cleans carpets, seats, interior trim, door panels and floor mats
1052929	16 oz. (0.473 L)	Wheel Cleaner	Spray on and rinse with water
1052930	8 oz. (0.237 L)	Capture Dry Spot Remover	Attracts, absorbs and removes soils on fabric
12345721	2.5 sq. ft.	Synthetic Chamois	Shines vehicle without scratching
12345725	12 oz. (0.354 L)	Silicone Tire Shine	Spray on tire shine
12377964*	16 oz. (0.473 L)	Finish Enhancer	Removes dust, fingerprints and surface contaminants
12377966*	16 oz. (0.473 L)	Cleaner Wax	Removes light scratches and oxidation and protects finish
12377984*	16 oz. (0.473 L)	Surface Cleaner	Removes contaminants, blemishes and swirl marks

See your General Motors Parts Department for these products.
See “Recommended Fluids and Lubricants” in the Maintenance Schedule booklet.
* For exterior use only.
** Not recommended for use on instrument panels.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)



This is the legal identifier for your vehicle. It appears on a plate in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the driver's side. You can see it if you look through the windshield from outside your vehicle. The VIN also appears on the Vehicle Certification and Service Parts labels and the certificates of title and registration.

Engine Identification

The 8th character in your VIN is the engine code. This code will help you identify your engine, specifications and replacement parts.

Service Parts Identification Label

You'll find this label on the rear wall of the trunk on the passenger's side. It's very helpful if you ever need to order parts. On this label is:

- your VIN,
- the model designation,
- paint information and
- a list of all production options and special equipment.

Be sure that this label is not removed from the vehicle.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Electrical System

Add-On Electrical Equipment

NOTICE:

Don't add anything electrical to your vehicle unless you check with your dealer first. Some electrical equipment can damage your vehicle and the damage wouldn't be covered by your warranty. Some add-on electrical equipment can keep other components from working as they should.

Your vehicle has an air bag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to your vehicle, see "Servicing Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle" in the Index.

Headlamp Wiring

The headlamp wiring has an individual fuse. An electrical overload will cause the lamps to go on and off, or in some cases to remain off. If this happens, have the headlamp wiring checked right away.

Windshield Wiper Fuses

A circuit breaker protects the wiper motor. If the wiper motor overheats due to heavy snow, the wipers will stop until the motor cools and will then restart.

A MiniFuse® powers the wiper motor. If the MiniFuse blows, there is an electrical problem. Be sure to have it fixed.

Power Windows and Other Power Options

Circuit breakers protect the power windows. When the current load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the problem is fixed or goes away.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The wiring circuits in your vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of fires caused by electrical problems.

Look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure you replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating. If a MaxiFuse should blow, see your dealer for service immediately.

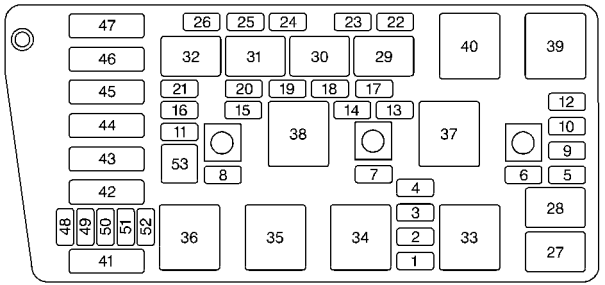
If you ever have a problem on the road and don't have a spare fuse, you can "borrow" one that has the same amperage. Pick some feature of your vehicle that you can get along without -- like the radio or cigarette lighter -- and use its fuse, if it is the correct amperage. Replace it as soon as you can.

The MaxiFuses are located in two Bussed Electrical Centers (BEC), one located near the engine compartment on the passenger's side and the other under the rear seat on the driver's side. If a MaxiFuse should blow, have your vehicle serviced by your dealer immediately.

Underhood Junction Block

The front Bussed Electrical Center (BEC) is located in the front of the engine compartment between the windshield washer fluid reservoir and the power steering fluid reservoir (on the passenger's side). Lift the cover to gain access.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



Minifuses

Fuse	Usage
1	ALDL
2	Accessory
3	Windshield Wipers
4	Not Used
5	Headlamp Low Beam Left
6	Headlamp Low Beam Right
7	Instrument Panel
8	Powertrain Control Module Battery
9	Headlamp High Beam Right
10	Headlamp High Beam Left
11	Ignition 1
12	Fog Lamps
13	Transmission
14	Cruise Control
15	Coil MDL
16	Injector Bank #2
17	Not Used
18	Not Used
19	Powertrain Control Module Ignition
20	Oxygen Sensor
21	Injector Bank #1
22	Auxiliary Power, (Cltr2)
23	Cigar Lighter
24	Daytime Running Lamps
25	Horn
26	Air Conditioner Clutch

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Micro Relays

Relay	Usage
27	Headlamp High Beam
28	Headlamp Low Beam
29	Fog Lamps
30	Daytime Running Lamps
31	Horn
32	Air Conditioner Clutch

Mini Relays

Relay	Usage
33	Not Used
34	Accessory
35	Not Used
36	Starter 1
37	Cooling Fan Secondary
38	Ignition 1
39	Cooling Fan Series/Parallel
40	Cooling Fan Primary

Maxibreaker

Circuit Breaker	Usage
41	Starter

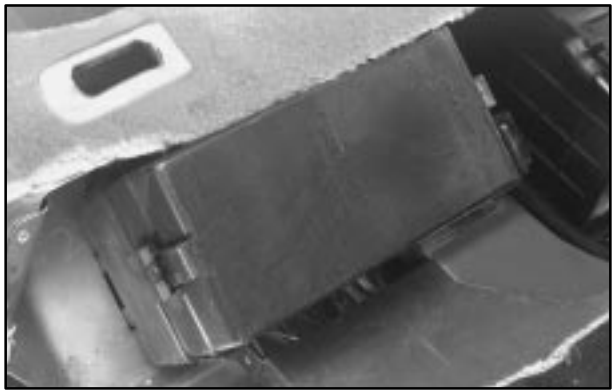
MaxiFuses

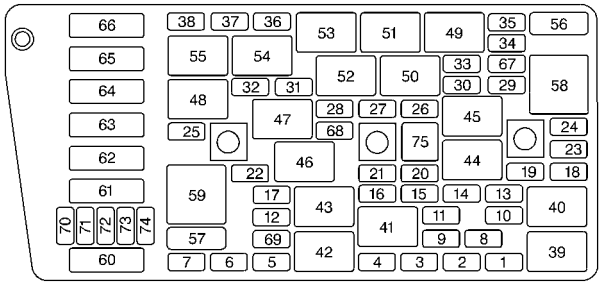
Fuse	Usage
42	Not Used
43	Antilock Brake System
44	Air Pump
45	Air Pump
46	Cooling Fan Secondary
47	Cooling Fan Primary

The spare fuses are located in numbers 48 through 52. The fuse puller is located in number 53.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Underseat Bussed Electrical Center (BEC)





The rear BEC is located under the rear seat on the driver's side. The rear seat cushion must be removed to access the BEC. See "Removing the Rear Seat Cushion" in the Index.

Minifuses

Fuse	Usage
1	Fuel Pump
2	Heater, Ventilation, Air Conditioner Blower
3	Memory Seat, Tilt and Telescoping Steering
4	Not Used
5	Driver Door Module

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse	Usage
6	Heated Seat Left Rear
7	Power Tilt and Telescoping Steering
8	Supplemental Inflation Restraint
9	Not Used
10	Lamps Park Right
11	Fuel Tank Ventilation Solenoid
12	Ignition 1
13	Lamps, Parking Left
14	Interior Lamp Dimmer Module
15	Navigation
16	Heated Seat Left Front
17	Export Lighting
18	Rear Door Modules
19	Stoplamps
20	Neutral Safety Back-up
21	Audio
22	Retained Accessory Power for Sunroof

Fuse	Usage
23	Not Used
24	Not Used
25	Passenger Door Module
26	Fuel Door/Trunk Release (Body)
27	Interior Lamps
28	Rear HVAC Blower
29	Ignition Switch
30	Not Used
31	Heated Seat Right Front
32	Continuous Variable Road Sensing Suspension
33	Heating, Ventilation, Air Conditioning
34	Ignition 3 Rear
35	Antilock Braking System
36	Turn Signal/Hazard
37	Heated Seat Right Rear
38	Dash Integration Module

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Micro Relays

Relay	Usage
39	Fuel Pump
40	Parking Lamps
41	Ignition 1
42	Park Brake A
43	Park Brake B
44	Park Shift Interlock
45	Reverse Lamps
46	Retained Accessory Power for Sunroof
47	Rear HVAC Blower
48	CVRSS Dampers
49	Ignition 3
50	Fuel Tank Door Release
51	Interior Lamps
52	Trunk Release
53	Front Courtesy Lamps
54	Rear Courtesy Lamps
55	Electronic Level Control Compressor

Circuit Breakers

Relay	Usage
56	Power Seats
57	Power Windows

Mini Relays

Relay	Usage
58	Cigarette Lighter
59	Rear Defog

MaxiFuses

Fuse	Usage
60	Park Brake
61	Rear Defog
62	Export Brake
63	Audio Amplifier
64	ELC Compressor/Exhaust
65	Cigar Lighter
66	Not Used

The spare fuses are located in numbers 70 through 74. The fuse puller is located in number 75.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Removing the Rear Seat Cushion

NOTICE:

The battery and main fuse boxes are located under the rear seat cushion. The battery's ground terminal and some relay wires are exposed. To help avoid damage to the battery and wires, be careful when removing or reinstalling the seat cushion. Do not remove covers from covered parts. Do not store anything under the seat, as objects could touch exposed wires and cause a short.

To Remove the Rear Seat Cushion

1. Pull up on the front of the cushion to release the front hooks.
2. Pull the cushion up and out toward the front of the vehicle.

To Reinstall the Rear Seat Cushion

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that isn't properly routed through the seat cushion or is twisted won't provide the protection needed in a crash. If the safety belt

CAUTION: (Continued)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION: (Continued)

hasn't been routed through the seat cushion at all, it won't be there to work for the next passenger. The person sitting in that position could be badly injured. After reinstalling the seat cushion, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and are not twisted.

1. Buckle the center passenger position safety belt, then route the safety belts through the proper slots in the seat cushion. Don't let the safety belts get twisted.
2. Slide the rear of the cushion up and under the seatback so the rear-locating guides hook into the wire loops on the back frame.
3. With the seat cushion lowered, push rearward and then press down on the seat cushion until the spring locks on both ends engage.
4. Check to make sure the safety belts are properly routed and that no portion of any safety belt is trapped under the seat. Also make sure the seat cushion is secured.

Replacement Bulbs

Application	Number
Headlamps Composite	
Inner High Beam	9005 HB3
Outer Low Beam	9006 HB4
Front Turn Signal	2357 NA
Stop/Taillamp	3057
Rear Turn Signal	3057

Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate capacities are given in English and metric conversions. Please refer to "Recommended Fluids and Lubricants" in the Maintenance Schedule booklet for more information.

Engine Specifications

Displacement . . . . . 279 cubic inches (4 565 cc)
Type . . . . . 4.6 L DOHC V8
VIN Engine Code
SLS . . . . . Y
STS 9

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Horsepower
SLS . . . . . 275 (bhp) @ 5600 rpm
205 (kW) @ 5600 rpm
STS . . . . . 300 (bhp) @ 6000 rpm
224 (kW) @ 6000 rpm
Torque
SLS . . . . . 300 (lb-ft) @ 4000 rpm
407 (N·m) @ 4000 rpm
STS . . . . . 295 (lb-ft) @ 4400 rpm
400 (N·m) @ 4400 rpm
Firing Order 1-2-7-3-4-5-6-8
Thermostat Starts To Open . . 177-184°F (81-85°C)

Wheel Nut Torque

100 lb-ft (140 N·m)

Capacities

Transaxle (4T80-E) . . . . . 15.0 quarts (14.2 L)
Crankcase (Engine Oil with Filter Change) . . . . . 7.5 quarts (7.1 L)
Engine Cooling System . . . . . 12.5 quarts (11.8 L)
Fuel Tank . . . . . 18.5 gallons (70.1L)
Refrigerant . . . . . 2.0 lbs. (0.91 kg)

All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling.

Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts

Air Filter Element . . . . . AC Type A1208C
Fuel Filter Element . . . . . AC Type GF-627
Engine Oil Filter . . . . . AC Type PF-58
PCV Valve . . . . . AC Type CV-774C
Spark Plugs PT16EPR-C13
(GM part 12561466)
Gap: 0.050 inches (1.3 mm)
Windshield Wiper
Blade (Hook Type) . . . . . 22 inches (56.5 cm)

Vehicle Dimensions

Wheel Base . . . . . 112.2 inches (285.0 cm)
Length . . . . . 201.0 inches (510.5 cm)
Height . . . . . 55.4 inches (140.6 cm)
Width . . . . . 75.0 inches (190.4 cm)
Front Tread . . . . . 62.7 inches (159.3 cm)
Rear Tread . . . . . 62.4 inches (158.6 cm)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 7 Customer Assistance Information

Here you will find out how to contact Cadillac if you need assistance. This section also tells you how to obtain service publications and how to report any safety defects.

7-2 Customer Satisfaction Procedure
7-3 Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users
7-4 Customer Assistance Offices
7-5 GM Mobility Program for Persons with Disabilities
7-5 Roadside Service
7-7 Roadside Service for the Hearing or Speech Impaired
7-8 Courtesy Transportation
7-8 Transportation Options
7-10 Warranty Information
7-10 Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government
7-11 Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government
7-11 Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors
7-11 Ordering Owner Publications in Canada

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Satisfaction Procedure

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to Cadillac. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of your vehicle will be resolved by your dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

STEP ONE -- Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service or parts manager, contact the owner of the dealership or the general manager.

STEP TWO -- If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be resolved by the dealership without further help, contact the Cadillac Customer Assistance Center, 24 hours a day, by calling 1-800-458-8006. In Canada, contact GM of Canada Customer Communication Centre in Oshawa by calling 1-800-263-3777 (English) or 1-800-263-7854 (French).

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Please have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance Representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (This is available from the vehicle registration or title, or the plate at the top left of the instrument panel and visible through the windshield.)
- Dealership name and location
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When contacting Cadillac, please remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest you follow Step One first if you have a concern.

STEP THREE -- Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with your new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, file with the GM/BBB Auto Line Program to enforce any additional rights you may have. Canadian owners refer to your Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet for information on the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out of court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you are required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing any court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Suite 800
Arlington, VA 22203-1804

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage and other factors. General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use Text Telephones (TTYs), Cadillac has TTY equipment available at its Customer Assistance Center. Any TTY user can communicate with Cadillac by dialing: 1-800-833-CMCC (2622). (TTY users in Canada can dial 1-800-263-3830.)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance Offices

Cadillac encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. If a U.S. customer wishes to write to Cadillac, the letter should be addressed to Cadillac's Customer Assistance Center.

United States

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 436004
Pontiac, MI 48343-6004

1-800-458-8006
1-800-833-2622 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-882-1112

Canada

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre, 163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

1-800-263-3777 (English)
1-800-263-7854 (French)
1-800-263-3830 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-882-1112

All Overseas Locations

GMODC - Customer Communication Centre
169-007
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Telephone: 905-644-4112
Fax: 905-644-4866

Caribbean Numbers

1-800-496-9992 (English) Puerto Rico
1-800-496-9993 (Spanish) Puerto Rico
1-800-751-4135 (English) Dominican Republic
1-800-751-4136 (Spanish) Dominican Republic
1-800-496-9994 U.S. Virgin Islands
1-800-389-0009 Bahamas
1-800-534-0122 Bermuda, Barbados, Antigua & B.V.I.

If toll free service is not available in the Caribbean, call Puerto Rico 1-787-763-1315.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

GM Mobility Program for Persons with Disabilities

This program, available to qualified applicants, can reimburse you up to $1,000 toward aftermarket driver or passenger adaptive equipment you may require for your vehicle (hand controls, wheelchair/scooter lifts, etc.).

This program can also provide you with free resource information, such as area driver assessment centers and mobility equipment installers. The program is available for a limited period of time from the date of vehicle purchase/lease. See your dealer for more details or call the GM Mobility Assistance Center at 1-800-323-9935. Text telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-9935.

GM of Canada also has a Mobility Program. Call 1-800-GM-DRIVE (463-7483) for details. When calling from outside Canada, please dial 1-905-644-3063. All TTY users call 1-800-263-3830.

Roadside Service

Cadillac's exceptional Roadside Service is more than an auto club or towing service. It provides every Cadillac owner with the advantage of contacting a Cadillac advisor and, when appropriate, a Cadillac trained dealer technician who can provide on-site service.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Each technician travels with a specially equipped service vehicle complete with the necessary Cadillac parts and tools required to handle most roadside repairs.

Cadillac Roadside Service® can be reached by dialing 1-800-882-1112, 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. This service is provided at no charge for any warranty-covered situation and for a nominal charge if the Cadillac is no longer under warranty. Roadside Service is available only in the United States and Canada.

Cadillac Owner Privileges™

Roadside Service provides several Cadillac Owner Privileges™ at "no charge," throughout your *2000 Cadillac Warranty Period -- 48 months/ 50,000 miles (80 000 km).*

Emergency Road Service is performed on site for the following situations:

- Towing Service
- Battery Jump Starting
- Lock Out Assistance
- Fuel Delivery
- Flat Tire Change (Covers change only)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- Trip Interruption -- If your trip is interrupted due to a warranty failure, incidental expenses may be reimbursed during the 48 months/50,000 miles (80 000 km) warranty period. Items covered are hotel, meals and rental car.

Roadside Service Availability

Wherever you drive in the United States or Canada, an advisor is available to assist you over the phone. A dealer technician, if available, can travel to your location within a 30 mile (50 km) radius of a participating Cadillac dealership. If beyond this radius, we will arrange to have your car towed to the nearest Cadillac dealership.

Reaching Roadside Service

Dial the toll-free Roadside Service number: 1-800-882-1112. An experienced Roadside Service Advisor will assist you and request the following information:

- A description of the problem
- Name, home address, home telephone number
- Location of your Cadillac and number you are calling from
- The model year, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), mileage and date of delivery

Roadside Service for the Hearing or Speech Impaired

Roadside Service is prepared to assist owners who have hearing difficulties or are speech impaired. Cadillac has installed special telecommunication devices called Text Telephone (TTY) in the Roadside Service Center.

Any customer who has access to a (TTY) or a conventional teletypewriter can communicate with Cadillac by dialing from the United States or Canada 1-800-833-CMCC -- daily, 24 hours.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Courtesy Transportation

Cadillac has always exemplified quality and value in its offering of motor vehicles. To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating dealers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for new vehicles.

The Courtesy Transportation program is offered to retail purchase/lease customers in conjunction with the Bumper-to-Bumper coverage provided by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Several transportation options are available when warranty repairs are required. This will reduce your inconvenience during warranty repairs.

Plan Ahead When Possible

When your vehicle requires warranty service, you should contact your dealer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising your service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer can help minimize your inconvenience. If your vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety-related. If it is, please call your dealership, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If the dealer requests that you simply drop the vehicle off for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for same day repair.

Transportation Options

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to wait Cadillac helps minimize your inconvenience by providing several transportation options. Depending on the circumstances, your dealer can offer you one of the following:

Shuttle Service

Participating dealers can provide you with shuttle service to get you to your destination with minimal interruption of your daily schedule. This includes a one way shuttle ride to a destination up to 10 miles from the dealership.

Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement

If your vehicle requires overnight warranty repairs, reimbursement up to $30 per day (five days maximum) may be available for the use of public transportation such as taxi or bus. In addition, should you arrange transportation through a friend or relative, reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses up to $10 per day (five day maximum) may be available. Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Courtesy Rental Vehicle

When your vehicle is unavailable due to warranty repairs, your dealer may arrange to provide you with a courtesy rental vehicle or reimburse you for a rental vehicle you obtained, at actual cost, up to a maximum of $35.00 per day supported by receipts. This requires that you sign and complete a rental agreement and meet state, local and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc. You are responsible for fuel usage charges and may also be responsible for taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair.

Generally it is not possible to provide a like-vehicle as a courtesy rental.

Additional Program Information

Courtesy Transportation is available during the Bumper-to-Bumper warranty coverage period, but it *is not* part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. A separate booklet entitled “Warranty and Owner Assistance Information” furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

Courtesy Transportation is available only at participating dealers and all program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every dealer. Please contact your dealer for specific information about availability. All Courtesy Transportation arrangements will be administered by appropriate dealer personnel.

Canadian Vehicles: For warranty repairs during the Complete Vehicle Coverage period of the General Motors of Canada New Vehicle Limited Warranty, alternative transportation may be available under the Courtesy Transportation Program. Please consult your dealer for details.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

General Motors reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.

Warranty Information

Your vehicle comes with a separate warranty booklet that contains detailed warranty information.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS TO THE UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-800-424-9393 (or 366-0123 in the Washington, D.C. area) or write to:

NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the hotline.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS TO THE CANADIAN GOVERNMENT

If you live in Canada, and you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should immediately notify Transport Canada, in addition to notifying General Motors of Canada Limited. You may write to:

Transport Canada
330 Sparks Street
Tower C
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N5

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS TO GENERAL MOTORS

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, we certainly hope you'll notify us. Please call us at 1-800-458-8006, or write:

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 436004
Pontiac, MI 48343-6004

In Canada, please call us at 1-800-263-3777 (English) or 1-800-263-7854 (French). Or, write:

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre, 163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Ordering Owner Publications in Canada

Owner's manuals are available for purchase for all current and *most* past model General Motors vehicles.

The toll-free telephone number for ordering information in Canada is 1-800-668-5539.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2000 CADILLAC SERVICE PUBLICATIONS ORDERING INFORMATION

The following publications covering the operation and servicing of your vehicle can be purchased by filling out the Service Publication Order Form in this book and mailing it in with your check, money order, or credit card information to Helm, Incorporated (address below.)

CURRENT PUBLICATIONS FOR 2000 CADILLAC

SERVICE MANUALS

Service Manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on engines, transmission, axle, suspension, brakes, electrical, steering, body, etc.
RETAIL SELL PRICE: $120.00

TRANSMISSION, TRANSAXLE, TRANSFER CASE UNIT REPAIR MANUAL

This manual provides information on unit repair service procedures, adjustments and specifications for the 2000 GM transmissions, transaxles and transfer cases.
RETAIL SELL PRICE: $50.00

SERVICE BULLETINS

Service Bulletins give technical service information needed to knowledgeably service General Motors cars and trucks. Each bulletin contains instructions to assist in the diagnosis and service of your vehicle.

OWNER'S INFORMATION

Owner publications are written directly for Owners and intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle.

Owner's Manual.
RETAIL SELL PRICE: $15.00

CURRENT & PAST MODEL ORDER FORMS

Service Publications are available for current and past model GM vehicles. To request an order form, please specify year and model name of the vehicle.

PLEASE COMPLETE THE ORDER FORM SHOWN ON THE FOLLOWING PAGE AND MAIL TO:

Helm, Incorporated • P.O. Box 07130 • Detroit, MI 48207

OR ORDER TOLL FREE: 1-800-551-4123

Monday-Friday 8:00 AM – 6:00 PM Eastern Time

For Credit Card Orders Only (VISA–MasterCard–Discover)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

ORDER TOLL FREE
(NOTE: For Credit Card Holders Only)
1-800-551-4123
(Monday-Friday 8:00 AM – 6:00 PM EST)
FAX Orders Only 1-313-865-5927

Orders will be mailed within 10 days of receipt. Please allow adequate time for postal service. If further information is needed, write to the address shown below or call 1-800-551-4123. Material cannot be returned for credit without packing slip with return information within 30 days of delivery. On returns, a re-stocking fee may be applied against the original order.

2000 GM

PUBLICATION FORM NUMBER	ITEM DESCRIPTION	VEHICLE MODEL NAME	VEHICLE MODEL YEAR	QTY.	PRICE EACH*	TOTAL PRICE
	Service Manual		2000		$120.00	
	Car & Light Truck Transmission Unit Repair		2000		$50.00	
	Owner's Manual		2000		$15.00	

SHIP TO

NOTE: Dealers and Companies please provide dealer or company name, and also the name of the person to whose attention the shipment should be sent.
Mail completed order form to:
HELM, INCORPORATED • P.O. Box 07130 • Detroit, MI 48207
For purchases outside U.S.A. please write to the above address for quotation.

(CUSTOMER'S NAME) **(ATTENTION)**

(STREET ADDRESS—NO P.O. BOX NUMBERS)

(CITY) **(STATE)** **(ZIP CODE)**

DAYTIME TELEPHONE NO. ( ) **AREA CODE**

PAYMENT

☐ **Check or Money Order payable to Helm, Inc. (USA funds only — *do not send cash.*)**
☐ MasterCard
☐ VISA
☐ Discover

Account Number: ☐☐☐☐ ☐☐☐☐ ☐☐☐☐ ☐☐☐☐

Expiration Date mo/yr: ☐☐ ☐☐

Check here if your billing address is different from your shipping address shown. ☐

CUSTOMER SIGNATURE

TOTAL MATERIAL	
Michigan Purchasers add 6% sales tax	
U.S. Order Processing	**$6.00**
Canadian Postage (See Note Below)	
GRAND TOTAL	

GM-CAD-ORD99

*(Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation. Allow ample time for delivery.)

Note to Canadian Customers: All listed prices are quoted in U.S. funds. Canadian residents are to make checks payable in U.S. funds. To cover Canadian postage, add $11.50 plus the U.S. order processing.

DEA DEALER E-PROCESS